

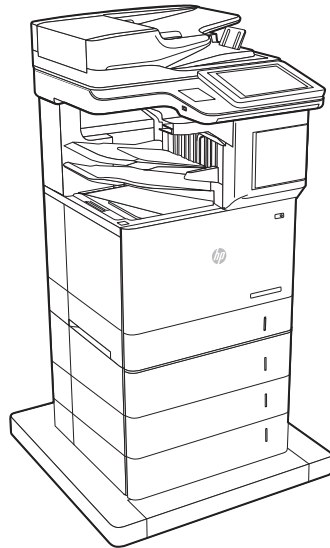


# LaserJet Enterprise MFP M631, M632, M633

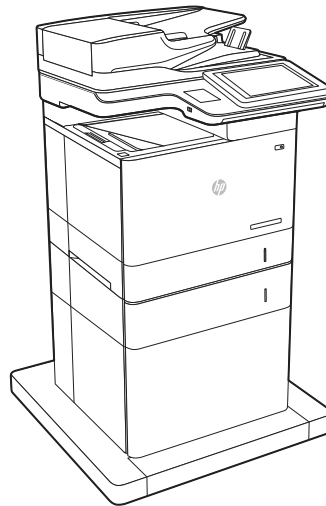
## User Guide



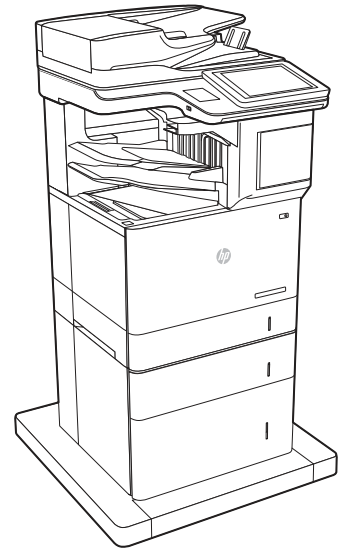
M631dn  
Flow M631h  
M632h  
M633fh



M631z



M632fht



Flow M632z  
Flow M633z



[www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP)  
[www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP)  
[www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP)



# HP LaserJet Enterprise MFP M631, M632, M633 - User Guide

## SUMMARY

This guide provides configuration, use, warranty, safety and environmental information.

## Legal information

### Copyright and License

© Copyright 2021 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 4, 10/2021

### Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple and the Apple logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

macOS is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

AirPrint is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Google™ is a trademark of Google Inc.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows Server® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

---

# Table of contents

|                                                                      |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1 Printer overview</b>                                            | <b>1</b>  |
| Warning icons                                                        | 1         |
| Printer views                                                        | 2         |
| Printer front view                                                   | 2         |
| Printer back view                                                    | 3         |
| Interface ports                                                      | 4         |
| Control-panel view                                                   | 5         |
| Printer specifications                                               | 8         |
| Technical specifications                                             | 8         |
| Supported operating systems                                          | 11        |
| Mobile printing solutions                                            | 13        |
| Printer dimensions                                                   | 13        |
| Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions | 16        |
| Operating-environment range                                          | 16        |
| Printer hardware setup and software installation                     | 17        |
| <b>2 Paper trays</b>                                                 | <b>18</b> |
| Load paper to Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)                             | 18        |
| Load Tray 1                                                          | 18        |
| Tray 1 paper orientation                                             | 20        |
| Use alternative letterhead mode                                      | 22        |
| Load paper to Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays                         | 22        |
| Load paper to Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays                         | 22        |
| Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays paper orientation                     | 24        |
| Use alternative letterhead mode                                      | 25        |
| Load paper to the 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray               | 26        |
| Load paper to the high-capacity input tray                           | 26        |
| Load and print envelopes                                             | 27        |
| Print envelopes from Tray 1                                          | 27        |
| Print envelopes from the envelope feeder accessory                   | 28        |
| Envelope orientation                                                 | 28        |
| Load and print labels                                                | 29        |
| Manually feed labels                                                 | 29        |
| Label orientation                                                    | 30        |
| Configure the stapling mailbox accessory                             | 30        |
| Configure the default staple location                                | 31        |
| Configure the operation mode                                         | 31        |
| Configure the HP print driver for the operation mode                 | 32        |
| <b>3 Supplies, accessories, and parts</b>                            | <b>34</b> |
| Order supplies, accessories, and parts                               | 34        |

|                                                                  |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Ordering.....                                                    | 34 |
| Supplies and accessories.....                                    | 34 |
| Maintenance/long-life consumables .....                          | 35 |
| Customer self-repair parts.....                                  | 36 |
| Configure the HP toner-cartridge-protection supply settings..... | 37 |
| Introduction.....                                                | 37 |
| Enable or disable the Cartridge Policy feature.....              | 37 |
| Enable or disable the Cartridge Protection feature.....          | 39 |
| Replace the toner cartridges.....                                | 42 |
| Toner-cartridge information.....                                 | 42 |
| Remove and replace the cartridge .....                           | 43 |
| Replace the staple cartridge (stapler models only) .....         | 46 |
| Remove and replace the staple cartridge.....                     | 47 |

## 4 Print..... 49

|                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Print tasks (Windows).....                                              | 49 |
| How to print (Windows).....                                             | 49 |
| Automatically print on both sides (Windows).....                        | 50 |
| Manually print on both sides (Windows) .....                            | 50 |
| Print multiple pages per sheet (Windows).....                           | 51 |
| Select the paper type (Windows).....                                    | 51 |
| Additional print tasks .....                                            | 52 |
| Print tasks (macOS).....                                                | 52 |
| How to print (macOS).....                                               | 52 |
| Automatically print on both sides (macOS).....                          | 53 |
| Manually print on both sides (macOS).....                               | 53 |
| Print multiple pages per sheet (macOS).....                             | 54 |
| Select the paper type (macOS).....                                      | 54 |
| Additional print tasks .....                                            | 55 |
| Store print jobs on the printer to print later or print privately ..... | 55 |
| Introduction.....                                                       | 55 |
| Create a stored job (Windows).....                                      | 55 |
| Create a stored job (macOS).....                                        | 56 |
| Print a stored job .....                                                | 57 |
| Delete a stored job.....                                                | 57 |
| Information sent to printer for Job Accounting purposes .....           | 58 |
| Mobile printing .....                                                   | 58 |
| Introduction.....                                                       | 58 |
| Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Direct Print, NFC, and BLE printing .....                  | 58 |
| HP ePrint via email .....                                               | 59 |
| AirPrint.....                                                           | 60 |
| Android embedded printing .....                                         | 60 |
| Print from a USB flash drive .....                                      | 61 |
| Enable the USB port for printing.....                                   | 61 |
| Print USB documents .....                                               | 62 |

## 5 Copy..... 63

|                                                                                    |           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Make a copy.....                                                                   | 63        |
| Copy on both sides (duplex).....                                                   | 65        |
| Additional copy tasks.....                                                         | 67        |
| <b>6 Scan.....</b>                                                                 | <b>68</b> |
| Set up Scan to Email.....                                                          | 68        |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 68        |
| Before you begin .....                                                             | 68        |
| Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                             | 69        |
| Step two: Configure the Network Identification settings.....                       | 70        |
| Step three: Configure the Send to Email feature .....                              | 70        |
| Step four: Configure the Quick Sets (optional) .....                               | 80        |
| Step five: Set up Send to Email to use Office 365 Outlook (optional) .....         | 80        |
| Set up Scan to Network Folder.....                                                 | 83        |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 83        |
| Before you begin .....                                                             | 83        |
| Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                             | 83        |
| Step two: Set up Scan to Network Folder .....                                      | 84        |
| Set up Scan to SharePoint.....                                                     | 93        |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 93        |
| Before you begin .....                                                             | 93        |
| Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                             | 93        |
| Step two: Enable Scan to SharePoint and create a Scan to SharePoint Quick Set..... | 94        |
| Scan a file directly to a SharePoint site.....                                     | 96        |
| Quick Set scan settings and options for Scan to SharePoint .....                   | 97        |
| Set up Scan to USB Drive .....                                                     | 98        |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 99        |
| Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                             | 99        |
| Step two: Enable Scan to USB Drive.....                                            | 99        |
| Step three: Configure the Quick Sets (optional) .....                              | 100       |
| Default scan settings for Scan to USB Drive setup .....                            | 101       |
| Default file settings for Save to USB setup.....                                   | 101       |
| Scan to email.....                                                                 | 102       |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 102       |
| Scan to email .....                                                                | 102       |
| Scan to network folder.....                                                        | 105       |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 105       |
| Scan to network folder .....                                                       | 105       |
| Scan to SharePoint.....                                                            | 107       |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 107       |
| Scan to SharePoint.....                                                            | 107       |
| Scan to USB drive.....                                                             | 109       |
| Introduction.....                                                                  | 109       |
| Scan to USB drive.....                                                             | 109       |
| Use HP JetAdvantage business solutions.....                                        | 111       |

|                                                                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Additional scan tasks.....                                                        | 111        |
| <b>7 Fax.....</b>                                                                 | <b>113</b> |
| Set up fax .....                                                                  | 113        |
| Introduction.....                                                                 | 113        |
| Set up fax by using the printer control panel.....                                | 113        |
| Change fax configurations .....                                                   | 114        |
| Fax dialing settings.....                                                         | 114        |
| General fax send settings .....                                                   | 115        |
| Fax receive settings.....                                                         | 116        |
| Send a fax.....                                                                   | 117        |
| Create a fax printing schedule.....                                               | 119        |
| Block incoming faxes .....                                                        | 120        |
| Create a list of blocked fax numbers.....                                         | 120        |
| Delete numbers from the list of blocked fax numbers .....                         | 120        |
| Additional fax tasks .....                                                        | 120        |
| <b>8 Manage the printer .....</b>                                                 | <b>122</b> |
| Advanced configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                 | 122        |
| Introduction.....                                                                 | 122        |
| How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....                               | 123        |
| HP Embedded Web Server features.....                                              | 124        |
| Configure IP network settings.....                                                | 132        |
| Printer sharing disclaimer .....                                                  | 132        |
| View or change network settings .....                                             | 132        |
| Rename the printer on a network .....                                             | 133        |
| Manually configure IPv4 TCP/IP parameters from the control panel.....             | 133        |
| Manually configure IPv6 TCP/IP parameters from the control panel.....             | 134        |
| Link speed and duplex settings.....                                               | 134        |
| Printer security features .....                                                   | 135        |
| Introduction.....                                                                 | 135        |
| Security statements.....                                                          | 135        |
| Assign an administrator password .....                                            | 135        |
| IP Security .....                                                                 | 137        |
| Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks .....                   | 137        |
| Lock the formatter .....                                                          | 137        |
| Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks .....                   | 137        |
| Energy-conservation settings.....                                                 | 137        |
| Print with EconoMode .....                                                        | 137        |
| Set the sleep timer and configure the printer to use 1 watt or less of power..... | 138        |
| Set the sleep schedule .....                                                      | 138        |
| HP Web Jetadmin.....                                                              | 139        |
| Software and firmware updates.....                                                | 139        |
| <b>9 Solve problems.....</b>                                                      | <b>140</b> |
| Customer support.....                                                             | 140        |

|                                                                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Control panel help system.....                                                                            | 140 |
| Reset factory settings.....                                                                               | 141 |
| Introduction.....                                                                                         | 141 |
| Method one: Reset factory settings from the printer control panel.....                                    | 141 |
| Method two: Reset factory settings from the HP Embedded Web Server (network-connected printers only)..... | 142 |
| A “Cartridge is low” or “Cartridge is very low” message displays on the printer control panel or EWS..... | 142 |
| Change the “Very Low” settings .....                                                                      | 142 |
| Order supplies .....                                                                                      | 143 |
| Printer does not pick up paper or misfeeds.....                                                           | 143 |
| Introduction.....                                                                                         | 143 |
| The printer does not pick up paper.....                                                                   | 143 |
| The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper .....                                                       | 146 |
| The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper .....                               | 149 |
| Clear paper jams.....                                                                                     | 150 |
| Introduction.....                                                                                         | 150 |
| Paper jam locations.....                                                                                  | 150 |
| Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams .....                                                             | 151 |
| Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?.....                                                       | 152 |
| 31.13.yz Clear paper jams in the document feeder .....                                                    | 152 |
| 13.B2.D1 jam error in tray 1.....                                                                         | 155 |
| 13.B2.D2 jam error in tray 2.....                                                                         | 159 |
| 13.A3 jam error in tray 3.....                                                                            | 163 |
| 13.A4 jam error in tray 4.....                                                                            | 167 |
| 13.A4 jam error in high-capacity input (HCI) tray 4.....                                                  | 172 |
| 13.A5 jam error in tray 5.....                                                                            | 176 |
| 13.B2 jam error in right door .....                                                                       | 181 |
| 13.B4 jam error in right door (fuser).....                                                                | 183 |
| 13.B9 jam error in right door (fuser).....                                                                | 185 |
| 13.D3 jam error in right door (duplexer).....                                                             | 188 |
| 13.E1 jam error in output bin.....                                                                        | 190 |
| 13.60 jam error in stapler/stacker.....                                                                   | 192 |
| 13.83 jam error in stapler/stacker .....                                                                  | 194 |
| 66.80.yz Staple jam/Stapler malfunction .....                                                             | 197 |
| Resolving mono print quality problems.....                                                                | 200 |
| Introduction.....                                                                                         | 200 |
| Troubleshoot print quality.....                                                                           | 200 |
| Improve copy image quality .....                                                                          | 213 |
| Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges.....                                                         | 213 |
| Calibrate the scanner.....                                                                                | 215 |
| Check the paper settings.....                                                                             | 215 |
| Check the image-adjustment settings .....                                                                 | 215 |
| Optimize copy quality for text or pictures.....                                                           | 216 |
| Edge-to-edge copying .....                                                                                | 216 |
| Improve scan image quality.....                                                                           | 216 |
| Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges.....                                                         | 217 |
| Check the resolution settings .....                                                                       | 218 |



|                                                                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Check the color settings .....                                                         | 219 |
| Check the image-adjustment settings .....                                              | 219 |
| Optimize scan quality for text or pictures.....                                        | 220 |
| Check the output-quality settings.....                                                 | 220 |
| Improve fax image quality.....                                                         | 221 |
| Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges.....                                      | 221 |
| Check the send-fax resolution settings.....                                            | 223 |
| Check the image-adjustment settings .....                                              | 223 |
| Optimize fax quality for text or pictures.....                                         | 223 |
| Check the error-correction setting.....                                                | 224 |
| Check the fit-to-page setting .....                                                    | 224 |
| Send to a different fax machine.....                                                   | 224 |
| Check the sender's fax machine.....                                                    | 225 |
| Solve wired network problems.....                                                      | 225 |
| Introduction.....                                                                      | 225 |
| Poor physical connection .....                                                         | 225 |
| The computer is unable to communicate with the printer .....                           | 225 |
| The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network.....           | 226 |
| New software programs might be causing compatibility problems.....                     | 226 |
| The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly .....                          | 226 |
| The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect .....                 | 226 |
| Solve wireless network problems.....                                                   | 226 |
| Introduction.....                                                                      | 226 |
| Wireless connectivity checklist .....                                                  | 227 |
| The printer does not print after the wireless configuration completes.....             | 227 |
| The printer does not print, and the computer has a third-party firewall installed..... | 228 |
| The wireless connection does not work after moving the wireless router or printer..... | 228 |
| Cannot connect more computers to the wireless printer .....                            | 228 |
| The wireless printer loses communication when connected to a VPN .....                 | 228 |
| The network does not appear in the wireless networks list .....                        | 228 |
| The wireless network is not functioning.....                                           | 229 |
| Reduce interference on a wireless network .....                                        | 229 |
| Solve fax problems .....                                                               | 229 |
| Checklist for solving fax problems .....                                               | 229 |
| General fax problems .....                                                             | 231 |

|            |     |
|------------|-----|
| Index..... | 233 |
|------------|-----|

---

# 1 Printer overview

Review the location of features on the printer, the physical and technical specifications of the printer, and where to locate setup information.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP)

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

## Warning icons

Use caution if you see a warning icon on your HP printer, as indicated in the icon definitions.

**Figure 1-1** Caution: Electric shock



**Figure 1-2** Caution: Hot surface



**Figure 1-3** Caution: Keep body parts away from moving parts



**Figure 1-4** Caution: Sharp edge in close proximity



**Figure 1-5** Warning



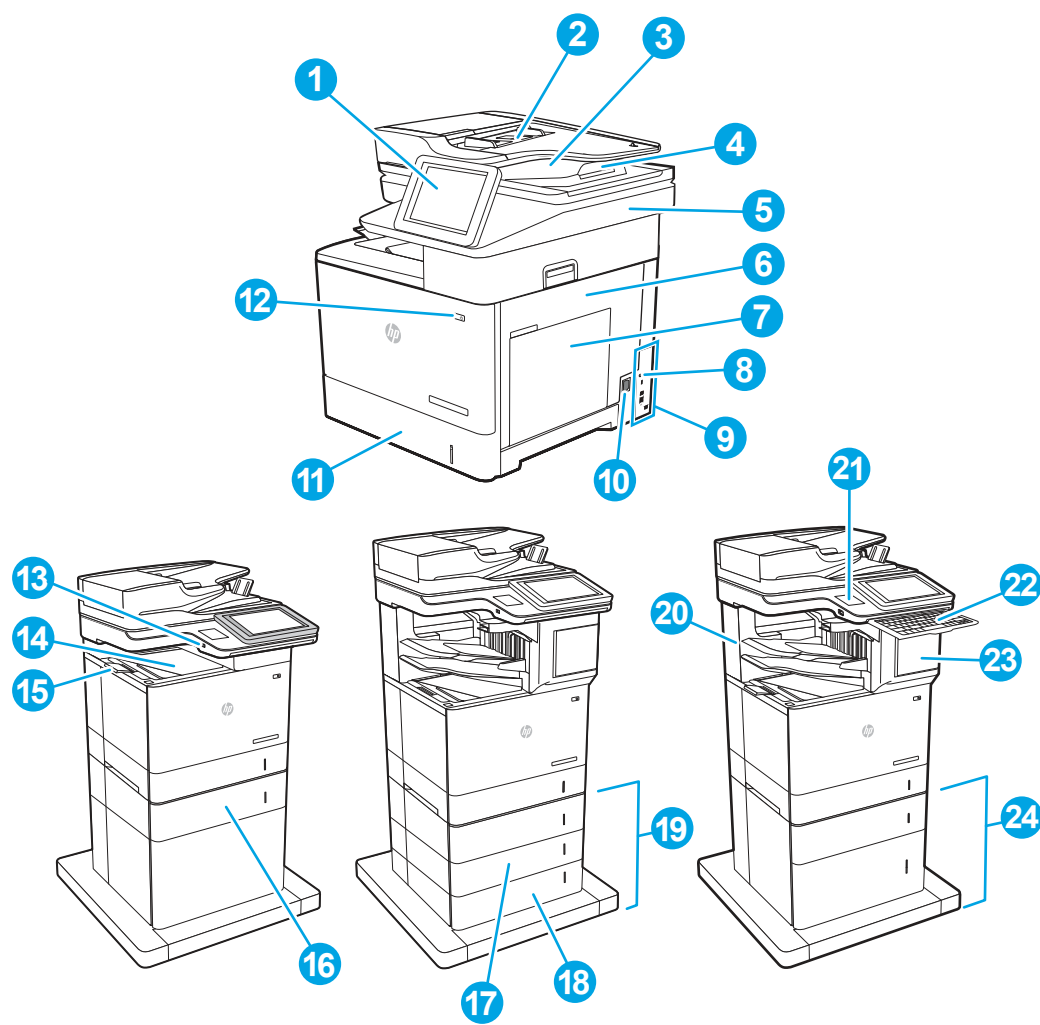
# Printer views

Identify certain parts of the printer and the control panel.

## Printer front view

Locate features on the front of the printer.

Figure 1-6 Printer front view components



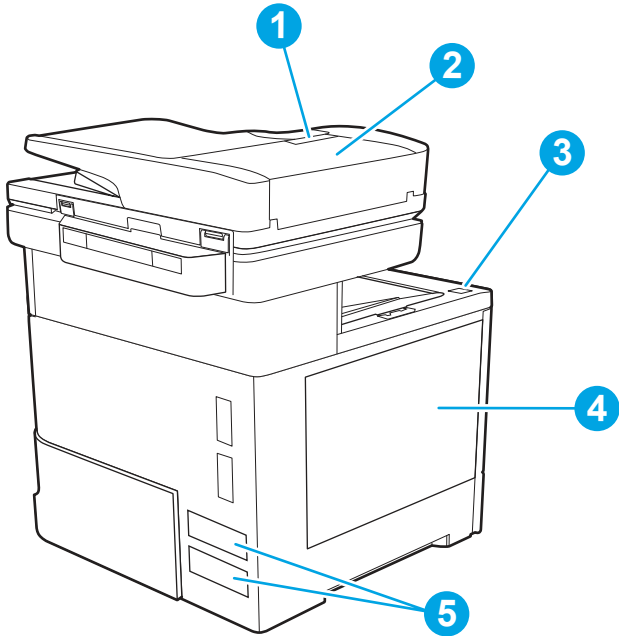
| Number | Description                                                                                    |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)                     |
| 2      | Document-feeder input tray                                                                     |
| 3      | Document-feeder output bin                                                                     |
| 4      | Document-feeder output extension (extend this when scanning longer pages, such as legal paper) |
| 5      | Scanner assembly                                                                               |
| 6      | Right door (access for clearing jams)                                                          |

| Number | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7      | Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)                                                                                                                       |
| 8      | Formatter (contains the interface ports)                                                                                                         |
| 9      | Slot for a cable-type security lock                                                                                                              |
| 10     | Power connection                                                                                                                                 |
| 11     | Tray 2                                                                                                                                           |
| 12     | On/off button                                                                                                                                    |
| 13     | Walk-up USB port                                                                                                                                 |
| 14     | Output bin                                                                                                                                       |
| 15     | Output bin extension                                                                                                                             |
| 16     | Tray 3                                                                                                                                           |
| 17     | Tray 4                                                                                                                                           |
| 18     | Tray 5                                                                                                                                           |
| 19     | 3x550-sheet tray (included with the M631z; optional for the M631dn, M631h, M632h, and M633fh)                                                    |
| 20     | HP Stapling Mailbox (included with the M631z, M632z, and M633z)                                                                                  |
| 21     | Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessories and third-party devices)                                                                 |
| 22     | Keyboard (M632z and M633z only. Pull the keyboard straight out to use it.)                                                                       |
|        | <b>CAUTION:</b> Close the keyboard when it is not in use.                                                                                        |
| 23     | Stapler door (included with the M631z, M632z, and M633z)                                                                                         |
| 24     | 1x550-sheet tray and 2,100-sheet high-capacity input tray (included with the M632z and M633z; optional for the M631dn, M631h, M632h, and M633fh) |

## Printer back view

Locate features on the back of the printer.

Figure 1-7 Printer rear view components

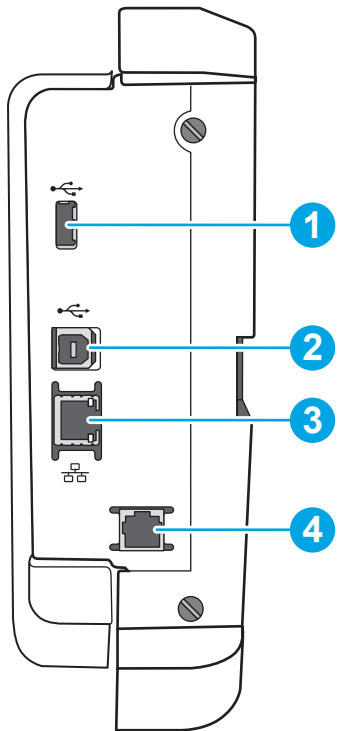


| Number | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Document feeder cover release latch              |
| 2      | Document-feeder cover (access for clearing jams) |
| 3      | Cartridge door release button                    |
| 4      | Cartridge door (access to the toner cartridge)   |
| 5      | Serial number and product number label           |

Interface ports

Locate the interface ports on the printer formatter.

Figure 1-8 Interface ports



| Number | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | USB port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered)<br><br>For easy-access USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel. |
| 2      | Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port                                                                                                                          |
| 3      | Local area network (LAN) Ethernet 10/100/1000 Ethernet network port                                                                                     |
| 4      | Fax port (fax models only)                                                                                                                              |

### Control-panel view

Locate features on the printer control panel.

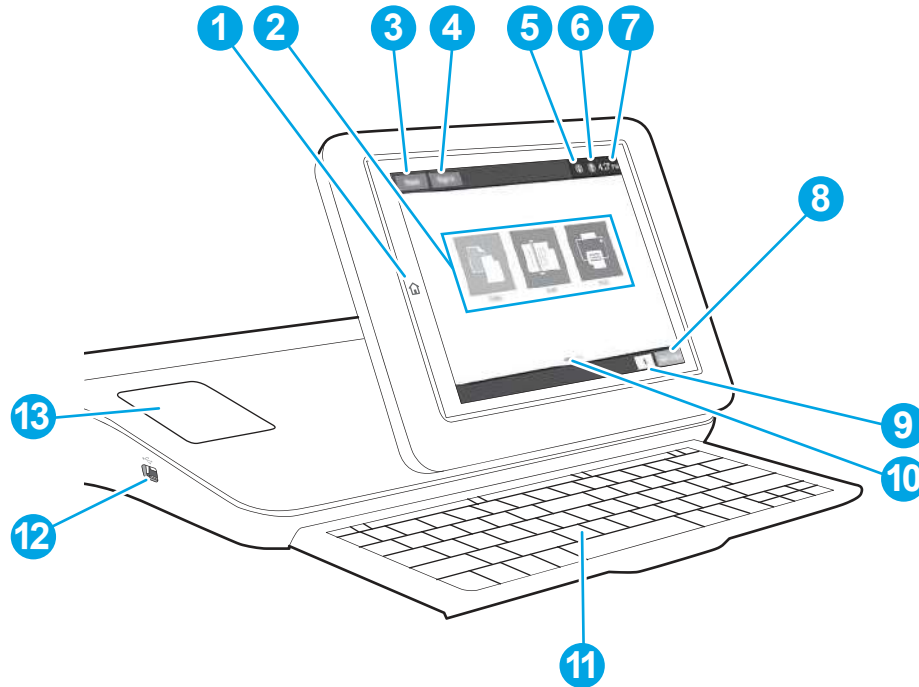
The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

Return to the Home screen at any time by touching the Home button on the left side of the printer control panel, or touch the Home button in the upper-left corner of most screens.

 **NOTE:** For more information about the printer-control-panel features, go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP). Select **Manuals**, and then select **General reference**.

 **NOTE:** The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.

**Figure 1-9 Control panel features**



| Number | Feature name                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Home button  | Touch the Home button to return to the Home screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2      | Applications area                                                                              | Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.                                                                  |
| 3      | Reset button                                                                                   | Touch the <b>Reset</b> button to clear changes, release the printer from a paused state, reset the copy count field, display hidden errors, and restore the default settings (including the language and keyboard layout).                                                                                                            |
| 4      | Sign In or Sign Out button                                                                     | Touch the <b>Sign In</b> button to access secured features.<br><br>Touch the <b>Sign Out</b> button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features. |

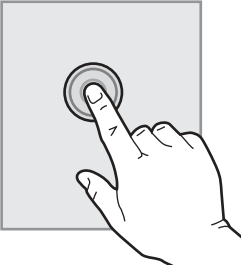
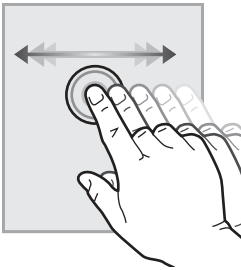
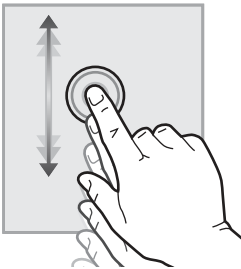
| Number | Feature name                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5      | Information button  | <p>Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Display Language</a>: Change the language setting for the current user session.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Sleep Mode</a>: Place the printer into sleep mode.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Wi-Fi Direct</a>: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Wireless</a>: View or change wireless connection settings (for the z model and for the dn and f models only when an optional wireless accessory is installed).</li> <li>• <a href="#">Ethernet</a>: View or change Ethernet connection settings.</li> <li>• <a href="#">HP Web Services</a>: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).</li> <li>• <a href="#">Fax Number</a>: View the printer fax number (fax models only).</li> </ul> |
| 6      | Help button         | Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 7      | Current time                                                                                         | Displays the current time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 8      | <a href="#">Start Copy</a> button                                                                    | Touch the <a href="#">Start Copy</a> button to start a copy job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9      | Copy count                                                                                           | The copy count indicates the number of copies that the printer is set to make.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 10     | Home-screen page indicator                                                                           | Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 11     | Keyboard<br>(Flow models only)                                                                       | <p>Flow models include a physical keyboard. The keys are mapped to a language in the same way the virtual keyboard on the printer touchscreen is mapped. Whenever the keyboard layout for the virtual keyboard changes, the keys on the physical keyboard are remapped to match the new settings.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> In some locations, the printer comes with adhesive keyboard overlays to customize the keys for different languages.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 12     | Easy-access USB port                                                                                 | <p>Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> An administrator must enable this port before use.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 13     | Hardware integration pocket (HIP)                                                                    | For connecting accessory and third-party devices                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## How to use the touchscreen control panel

Perform the following actions to use the printer touchscreen control panel.



**Table 1-1** Touchscreen control panel actions

| Action                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                           | Example                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Touch</b><br>    | Touch an item on the screen to select that item or open that menu. Also, when scrolling through menus, briefly touch the screen to stop the scrolling.                | Touch the <a href="#">Settings</a> icon to open the <a href="#">Settings</a> app. |
| <b>Swipe</b><br>    | Touch the screen and then move your finger horizontally to scroll the screen sideways.                                                                                | Swipe until the <a href="#">Settings</a> app displays.                            |
| <b>Scroll</b><br> | Touch the screen and then move your finger vertically to scroll the screen up and down. When scrolling through menus, briefly touch the screen to stop the scrolling. | Scroll through the <a href="#">Settings</a> app.                                  |

## Printer specifications

Determine the specifications for your printer model.

## Technical specifications

Review the technical specifications for the printer.

See [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP) for current information.

### Product numbers for each model

- M631dn - #J8J63A
- M631h - # J8J64A

- M631z - #J8J65A
- M632h - #J8J07A
- M632fht - #J8J71A
- M632z - # J8J72A
- M633fh - # J8J76A
- M633z - #J8J78A

**Table 1-2 Paper handling specifications**

| Paper handling features                                       | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)                                   | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                  |
| Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)                                   | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                  |
| 1 x 550-sheet paper feeder                                    | Optional      | Optional               | Optional (not available for M631z) |
| <b>NOTE:</b> The printer supports as many as six input trays. |               |                        |                                    |
| 1 x 550-sheet feeder plus 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder    | Optional      | Optional               | Included with the M632z and M633z  |
| Envelope feeder cassette for printing up to 75 envelopes      | Optional      | Optional               | Optional                           |
| HP Stapling Mailbox                                           | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                                  |
| Automatic duplex printing                                     | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                  |

**Table 1-3 Connectivity specifications**

| Connectivity features                                                           | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6                          | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                 |
| Hi-Speed USB 2.0                                                                | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                 |
| Easy-access USB port for printing without a computer and upgrading the firmware | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                 |
| Hardware Integration Pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices    | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                                 |
| HP Internal USB Ports                                                           | Optional      | Optional               | Optional                          |
| HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory for printing from mobile devices      | Optional      | Optional               | Optional                          |
| Integrated HP Wi-Fi Direct accessory for printing from mobile devices           | Not supported | Not supported          | Included with the M631z and M633z |
| HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server Accessory for wireless connectivity            | Optional      | Optional               | Optional                          |

**Table 1-4 Print specifications**

| Print features                                                         | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| Prints 52 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 55 ppm on letter-size paper | M631dn        | M631h                  | M631z               |
| Prints 61 ppm on A4 and 65 ppm on letter-size paper                    | M632h         | M632fht                | M632z               |
| Prints 71 ppm on A4 and 75 ppm on letter-size paper                    | Not supported | M633fh                 | M633z               |
| Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)                        | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                   |
| Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately     | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                   |

**Table 1-5 Copy and scan specifications**

| Copy and scan features                                                                                                                               | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| Copies 52 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 55 ppm on letter-size paper*                                                                              | M631dn        | M631h                  | M631z               |
| Copies 61 ppm on A4 and 65 ppm on letter-size paper*                                                                                                 | M632h         | M632fht                | M632z               |
| Copies 71 ppm on A4 and 75 ppm on letter-size paper                                                                                                  | Not supported | M633fh                 | M633z               |
| Scans at 75 images per minute (ipm) (monochrome or color)*                                                                                           | ✓             | ✓                      | Not supported       |
| Scans at 120 ipm (monochrome and color)                                                                                                              | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |
| Easy-access USB copying and scanning (no computer required)                                                                                          | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                   |
| 150-page document feeder with electronic duplex copying and scanning                                                                                 | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                   |
| HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection                                                                                  | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |
| Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |
| SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping                                                                        | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |
| Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text                                                                       | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |
| Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page                                                            | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |

\*Copy and scan speeds are subject to change.

**Table 1-6 Digital Send specifications**

| Digital Send                                                  | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| Send documents to email, USB, and shared folders on a network | ✓             | ✓                      | ✓                   |
| Send documents to SharePoint®                                 | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |

**Table 1-7 Memory specifications**

| Memory features                           | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.75 GB base memory, expandable to 2.5 GB | ✓             | ✓                      | Not supported       |
| 2.25 GB base memory, expandable to 3 GB   | Not supported | Not supported          | ✓                   |

**Table 1-8 Mass storage specifications**

| Mass storage features                                      | M631dn, M632h                                    | M631h, M632fht, M633fh | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| Mass storage: 16 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC) | M631dn                                           | Not supported          | Not supported       |
| 320 GB HP High-Performance Secure Hard Disk                | Included with the M632h; optional for the M631dn | ✓                      | ✓                   |

**Table 1-9 Other specifications**

| Other features                                                                               | M631dn, M632h | M631h, M632fht, M633fh                                | M631z, M632z, M633z |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Touchscreen control panel                                                                    | ✓             | ✓                                                     | ✓                   |
| Retractable keyboard                                                                         | Not supported | Not supported                                         | ✓                   |
| Security: HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer | Optional      | Optional                                              | Optional            |
| Fax                                                                                          | Optional      | Included with M632fht, M633fh; optional for the M631h | ✓                   |

## Supported operating systems

The following information applies to the printer-specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for macOS and to the software installer.

**Linux:** For information and print drivers for Linux, go to [www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting](http://www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting).

**UNIX:** For information and print drivers for UNIX®, go to [www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts](http://www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts).

The following information applies to the printer-specific HP PCL 6 print drivers, and HP print drivers for macOS.

**Windows:** Download HP Easy Start from [123.hp.com](https://123.hp.com) to install the HP print driver. Or, go to the printer-support website for this printer: [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP) to download the print driver or the software installer to install the HP print driver.

**macOS:** Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start from either [123.hp.com](https://123.hp.com) or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver.

1. Go to [123.hp.com](https://123.hp.com).
2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

**Table 1-10 Supported operating systems and print drivers**

| Operating system                                                  | Print driver installed (from the software on the web)                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows 8, 32-bit and 64-bit                                      | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows 8.1, 32-bit and 64-bit                                    | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows 10, 32-bit and 64-bit                                     | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows Server 2008 R2, SP 1, 64-bit                              | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows Server 2012, 64-bit                                       | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit                                    | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows Server 2016, 64-bit                                       | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| Windows Server 2019, 64-bit                                       | The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it. |
| macOS 10.13 High Sierra, macOS 10.14 Mojave, macOS 10.15 Catalina | Download HP Easy Start from <a href="https://123.hp.com">123.hp.com</a> , and then use it to install the print driver.                                                              |

 **NOTE:** Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](https://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP) for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.

 **NOTE:** For details on client and server operating systems and for HP UPD driver support for this printer, go to [www.hp.com/go/upd](https://www.hp.com/go/upd). Under **Additional information**, click the links.

**Table 1-11 Minimum system requirements**

| Windows                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | macOS                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Internet connection</li> <li>• Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection</li> <li>• 2 GB of available hard-disk space</li> <li>• 1 GB RAM (32-bit) or 2 GB RAM (64-bit)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Internet connection</li> <li>• Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection</li> <li>• 1.5 GB of available hard-disk space</li> </ul> |



**NOTE:** The Windows software installer installs the HP Smart Device Agent Base service. The file size is approximately 100 kb. Its only function is to check for printers connected via USB hourly. No data is collected. If a USB printer is found, it then tries to locate a JetAdvantage Management Connector (JAMc) instance on the network. If a JAMc is found, the HP Smart Device Agent Base is securely upgraded to a full Smart Device Agent from JAMc, which will then allow printed pages to be accounted for in a Managed Print Services (MPS) account. The driver-only web packs downloaded from [hp.com](http://hp.com) for the printer and installed through the Add Printer wizard do not install this service.

To uninstall the service, open the **Control Panel**, select **Programs** or **Programs and Features**, and then select **Add/Remove Programs** or **Uninstall a Program** to remove the service. The file name is **HPSmartDeviceAgentBase**.

## Mobile printing solutions

HP offers multiple mobile and ePrint solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device.

To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to [www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting](http://www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting).



**NOTE:** Update the printer firmware to ensure all mobile printing and ePrint capabilities are supported.

- Wi-Fi Direct (wireless models only, with HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC Wireless accessory installed)
- HP ePrint via email (Requires HP Web Services to be enabled and the printer to be registered with HP Connected)
- HP Smart app
- Google Cloud Print
- AirPrint
- Android Printing

## Printer dimensions

Review the dimensions for the printer and accessories.

**Table 1-12 Dimensions for base models (M631dn, M631h Flow, M632h, M633fh)**

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 640 mm (25.2 in)     | 865 mm (34.1 in)     |
| Depth       | 558 mm (22 in)       | 805 mm (31.7 in)     |

**Table 1-12** Dimensions for base models (M631dn, M631h Flow, M632h, M633fh) (continued)

| Measurement                   | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Width                         | 512 mm (20.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight (with toner cartridge) | 33.2 kg (73.2 lb)    | 33.2 kg (73.2 lb)    |

**Table 1-13** Dimensions for M631z

| Measurement                   | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height                        | 1,234 mm (48.6 in)   | 1,500 mm (59.1 in)   |
| Depth                         | 658 mm (25.9 in)     | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width                         | 661 mm (26 in)       | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight (with toner cartridge) | 62.5 kg (137.8 lb)   | 62.5 kg (137.8 lb)   |

**Table 1-14** Dimensions for M632fht

| Measurement                   | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height                        | 1,094 mm (43.2 in)   | 1,365 mm (53.7 in)   |
| Depth                         | 660 mm (26 in)       | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width                         | 665 mm (26.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight (with toner cartridge) | 52.5 kg (115.8 lb)   | 52.5 kg (115.8 lb)   |

**Table 1-15** Dimensions for M632z Flow, M633z Flow

| Measurement                   | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height                        | 1,234 mm (48.5 in)   | 1,500 mm (59.1 in)   |
| Depth                         | 658 mm (25.9 in)     | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width                         | 661 mm (26 in)       | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight (with toner cartridge) | 64.3 kg (141.8 lb)   | 64.3 kg (141.8 lb)   |

**Table 1-16** Dimensions for the 1 x 550-sheet paper feeder

| Measurement                   | Tray fully closed | Tray fully opened |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Height                        | 148 mm (5.8 in)   | 148 mm (5.8 in)   |
| Depth                         | 558 mm (22 in)    | 869 mm (34.2 in)  |
| Width                         | 512 mm (20.15 in) | 617 mm (24.3 in)  |
| Weight (with toner cartridge) | 6.8 kg (15 lb)    | 6.8 kg (15 lb)    |

**Table 1-17** Dimensions for the printer with a 1 x 550-sheet paper feeder

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 766 mm (30.15 in)    | 1,010 mm (39.8 in)   |
| Depth       | 558 mm (22 in)       | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width       | 512 mm (20.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight      | 40 kg (88.2 lb)      | 40 kg (88.2 lb)      |

**Table 1-18** Dimensions for the 1 x 550-sheet feeder with printer stand

| Measurement | Accessory fully closed | Accessory fully opened |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Height      | 478 mm (18.8 in)       | 478 mm (18.8 in)       |
| Depth       | 658 mm (25.9 in)       | 1,050 mm (41.3 in)     |
| Width       | 660 mm (26 in)         | 980 mm (38.6 in)       |
| Weight      | 19.28 kg (42.5 lb)     | 19.28 kg (42.5 lb)     |

**Table 1-19** Dimensions for the printer with a 1 x 550-sheet feeder with printer stand

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 1,094 mm (43.2 in)   | 1,365 mm (53.7 in)   |
| Depth       | 600 mm (26 in)       | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width       | 665 mm (26.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight      | 52.5 kg (115.8 lb)   | 52.5 kg (115.8 lb)   |

**Table 1-20** Dimensions for the 1 x 550-sheet feeder and 2,000-sheet HCI tray with stand

| Measurement | Accessory fully closed | Accessory fully opened |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Height      | 478 mm<br>(18.8 in)    | 478 mm<br>(18.8 in)    |
| Depth       | 658 mm (25.9 in)       | 975 mm (38.4 in)       |
| Width       | 660 mm (26 in)         | 980 mm (38.6 in)       |
| Weight      | 24.5 kg (54 lb)        | 24.5 kg (54 lb)        |

**Table 1-21** Dimensions for the printer with a 1 x 550-sheet feeder and 2,000-sheet HCI tray with stand

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 1,090 mm (42.9 in)   | 1,360 mm (53.5 in)   |
| Depth       | 658 mm (25.9 in)     | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width       | 660 mm (26 in)       | 1,030 mm (40.5)      |
| Weight      | 57.7 kg (127.2 lb)   | 57.7 kg (127.2 lb)   |



**Table 1-22** Dimensions for the envelope feeder cassette

| Measurement | Accessory fully closed | Accessory fully opened |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Height      | 148 mm (5.8 in)        | 148 mm (5.8 in)        |
| Depth       | 558 mm (22 in)         | 869 mm (34.2 in)       |
| Width       | 512 mm (20.15 in)      | 617 mm (24.3 in)       |
| Weight      | 6.9 kg (15.3 lb)       | 6.9 kg (15.3 lb)       |

**Table 1-23** Dimensions for the printer with an envelope feeder

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 766 mm (30.15 in)    | 1,010 mm (39.8 in)   |
| Depth       | 558 mm (22 in)       | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width       | 512 mm (20.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight      | 39.6 kg (87.3)       | 39.6 kg (87.3)       |

**Table 1-24** Dimensions for the printer with an HP Stapling Mailbox

| Measurement | Printer fully closed | Printer fully opened |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Height      | 779 mm (30.7 in)     | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Depth       | 558 mm (22 in)       | 890 mm (35 in)       |
| Width       | 512 mm (20.15 in)    | 1,030 mm (40.5 in)   |
| Weight      | 39.8 kg (87.7)       | 39.8 kg (87.7)       |

## Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain power specifications.

See [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP) for current information.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

## Operating-environment range

Review the operating-environment specifications.

**Table 1-25** Operating-environment specifications

| Environment       | Recommended                       | Storage                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Temperature       | 17° to 25°C (62.6° to 77°F)       | 15 to 32.5°C (59° to 90°F) |
| Relative humidity | 30% to 70% relative humidity (RH) | 10% to 80% RH              |

## Printer hardware setup and software installation

For basic setup instructions, see the Hardware Installation Guide that came with the printer. For additional instructions, go to HP support on the web.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP) for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer, which includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information
- Find instructions about how to use the Microsoft Add Printer tool

---

## 2 Paper trays

Discover how to load and use the paper trays, including how to load special items such as envelopes and labels.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

Use caution when loading the paper trays.

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not extend more than one paper tray at a time.

Do not use paper tray as a step.

All trays must be closed while relocating/moving product.

Keep hands out of paper trays or drawers when closing.

If the printer has a keyboard, close keyboard tray when not in use.

---

### Load paper to Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

The following information describes how to load paper in Tray 1.

---

 **CAUTION:** To avoid jams, never add or remove paper from Tray 1 during printing.

---

#### Load Tray 1

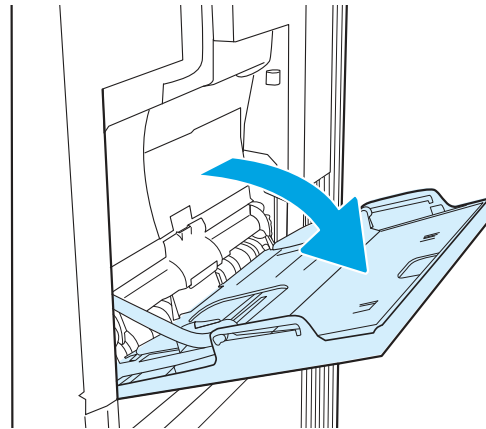
This tray holds up to 100 sheets of 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) paper or 10 envelopes.

---

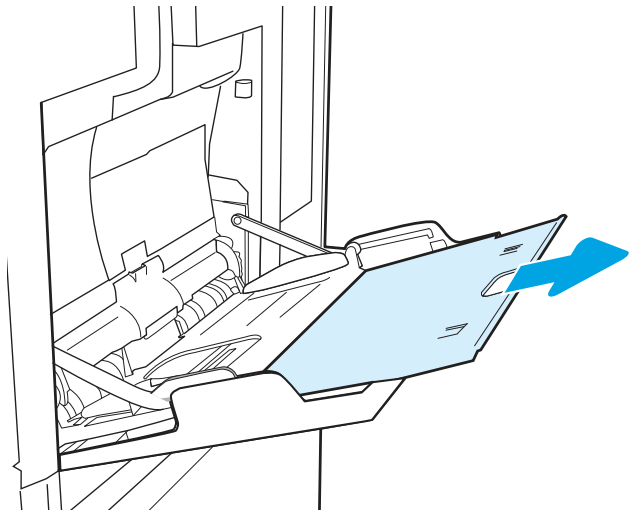
 **CAUTION:** To avoid jams, never add or remove paper from Tray 1 during printing.

---

1. Open Tray 1.



2. Pull out the tray extension to support the paper.

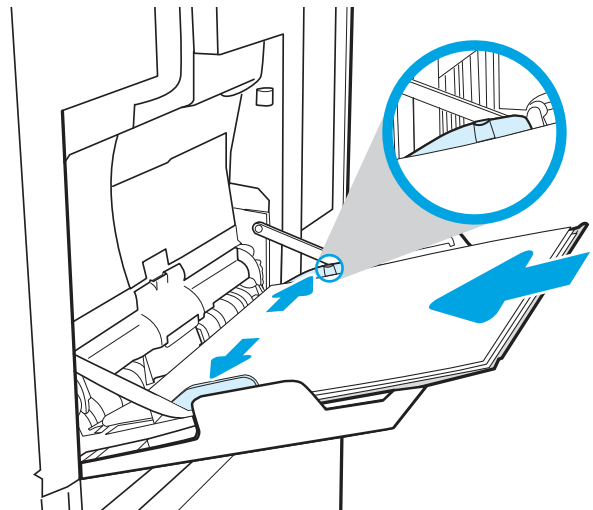


3. Use the blue adjustment latch to spread the paper guides to the correct size, and then load paper in the tray. For information about how to orient the paper, see [Tray 1 paper orientation on page 20](#)

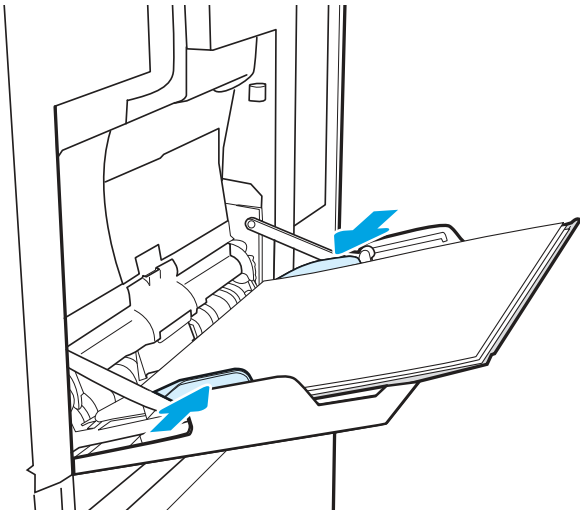
Make sure that the paper fits under the fill line on the paper guides.



**NOTE:** The maximum stack height is 10 mm (0.4 in), or approximately 100 sheets of 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) paper.



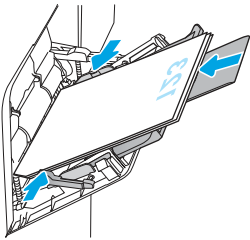
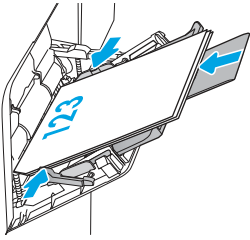
4. Using the blue adjustment latch, adjust the side guides so that they lightly touch the paper stack, but do not bend it.



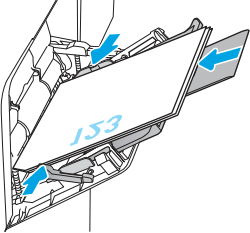
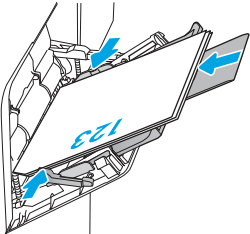
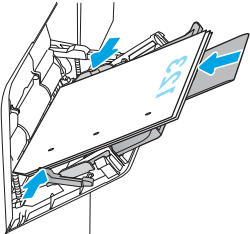
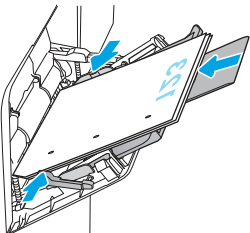
Tray 1 paper orientation

Review the proper orientation for loading paper.

Table 2-1 Tray 1 paper orientation

| Paper type               | Image orientation | Duplex mode                                                            | Paper size                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | How to load paper                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Letterhead or preprinted | Portrait          | 1-sided printing                                                       | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 3 x 5, 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Japanese Postcard (Postcard (JIS)), Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Face-down<br><br>Bottom edge leading into the printer<br> |
| Letterhead or preprinted | Portrait          | Automatic 2-sided printing or with Alternative Letterhead Mode enabled | Letter, Legal, Executive, Oficio (8.5 x 13), A4, A5, RA4, B5 (JIS), Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm                                                                                                                                                                              | Face-up<br><br>Top edge leading into the printer<br>      |

**Table 2-1** Tray 1 paper orientation (continued)

| Paper type               | Image orientation      | Duplex mode                                                            | Paper size                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | How to load paper                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Letterhead or preprinted | Landscape              | 1-sided printing                                                       | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 3 x 5, 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Japanese Postcard (Postcard (JIS)), Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Face-down<br>Top edge toward the front of the printer<br> |
| Letterhead or preprinted | Landscape              | Automatic 2-sided printing or with Alternative Letterhead Mode enabled | Letter, Legal, Executive, Oficio (8.5 x 13), A4, A5, RA4, B5 (JIS), Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm                                                                                                                                                                              | Face-up<br>Top edge toward the front of the printer<br>  |
| Prepunched               | Portrait and landscape | 1-sided printing                                                       | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 3 x 5, 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Japanese Postcard (Postcard (JIS)), Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Holes toward the front of the printer<br>               |
| Prepunched               | Portrait and landscape | Automatic 2-sided printing or with Alternative Letterhead Mode enabled | Letter, Legal, Executive, Oficio (8.5 x 13), A4, A5, RA4, B5 (JIS), Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm                                                                                                                                                                              | Holes toward the front of the printer<br>               |

## Use alternative letterhead mode

Use the [Alternative Letterhead Mode](#) feature to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all jobs, whether printing to one side of the sheet of paper or to both sides. When using this mode, load paper as for automatic duplex printing.

### Enable Alternative Letterhead Mode by using the printer control-panel menus

Use the [Settings](#) menu to set the [Alternative Letterhead Mode](#) setting.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to and open the [Settings](#) menu.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Copy/Print or Print](#)
  - b. [Manage Trays](#)
  - c. [Alternative Letterhead Mode](#)
3. Select [On](#).

## Load paper to Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays

The following information describes how to load paper into Tray 2 and the optional 550-sheet trays.

---

 **NOTE:** The procedure to load paper for the 550-sheet trays is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

---

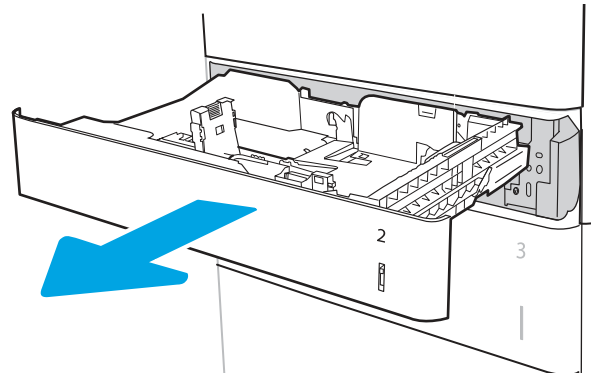
### Load paper to Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays

These trays hold up to 550 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) paper.

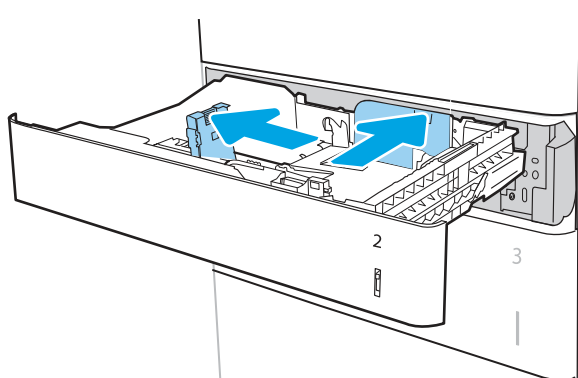
1. Open the tray.

 **NOTE:** Do not open this tray while it is in use.

---



2. Adjust the paper-width guides by squeezing the blue adjustment latches and sliding the guides to the size of the paper being used.



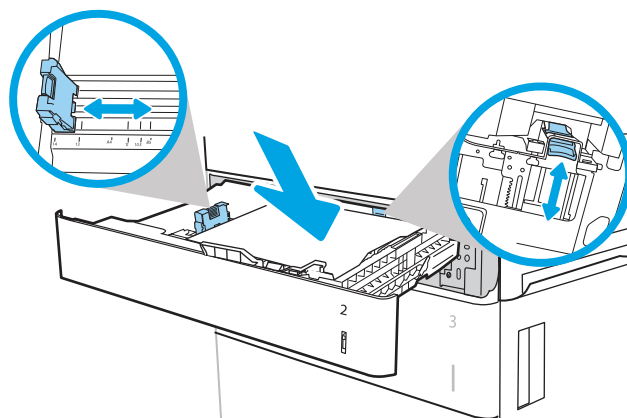
3. Load paper into the tray. Check the paper to verify the guides lightly touch the stack, but do not bend it. For information about how to orient the paper, see [Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays paper orientation on page 24](#).



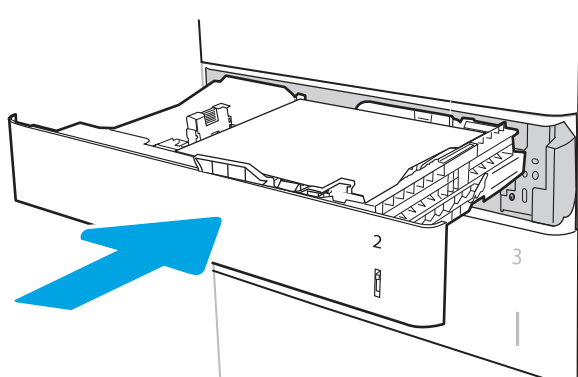
**NOTE:** To prevent jams, adjust the paper guides to the correct size and do not overfill the tray. Be sure that the top of the stack is below the tray full indicator.



**NOTE:** To prevent jams, do not overfill the tray. Be sure that the top of the stack is below the tray full indicator.



4. Close the tray.

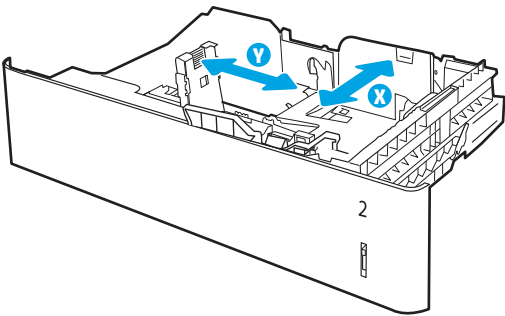


5. The tray configuration message displays on the printer control panel.



6. Touch the **OK** button to accept the detected type and size, or touch the **Modify** button to choose a different paper size or type.

For custom-size paper, specify the X and Y dimensions for the paper when the prompt displays on the printer control panel.



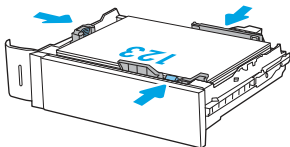
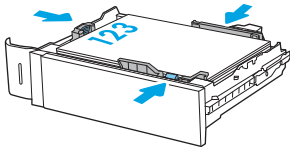
7. Select the correct type and size, and then touch the **OK** button.

Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays paper orientation

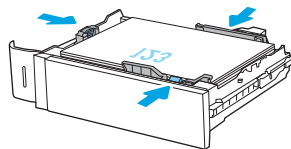
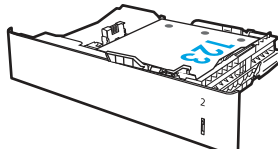
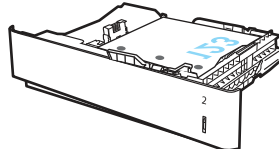
Review the paper-loading orientation guidance.

Table 2-2 Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays paper orientation

| Paper type               | Image orientation | Duplex mode      | Paper size                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | How to load paper                                    |
|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Letterhead or preprinted | Portrait          | 1-sided printing | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Face-up<br><br>Top edge at the left side of the tray |
| Letterhead or preprinted | Landscape         | 1-sided printing | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Face-up<br><br>Top edge toward the back of the tray  |



**Table 2-2** Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays paper orientation (continued)

| Paper type               | Image orientation     | Duplex mode                                                            | Paper size                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | How to load paper                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Letterhead or preprinted | Landscape             | Automatic 2-sided printing or with Alternative Letterhead Mode enabled | Letter, Legal, Executive, Oficio (8.5 x 13), A4, A5, RA4, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm                                                                                                                                             | Face-down<br>Top edge toward the back of the tray<br> |
| Prepunched               | Portrait or landscape | 1-sided printing                                                       | Letter, Legal, Executive, Statement, Oficio (8.5 x 13), 4 x 6, 5 x 7, 5 x 8, A4, A5, A6, RA4, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), L (90 x 130 mm), 10 x 15 cm, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm, Double Japan Postcard Rotated (Double Postcard (JIS)) | Face-up<br>Holes toward the back of the tray<br>      |
| Prepunched               | Portrait or landscape | Automatic 2-sided printing or with Alternative Letterhead Mode enabled | Letter, Legal, Executive, Oficio (8.5 x 13), A4, A5, RA4, Oficio (216 x 340), 16K 195 x 270 mm, 16K 184 x 260 mm, 16K 197 x 273 mm                                                                                                                                             | Face-down<br>Holes toward the front of the tray<br> |

## Use alternative letterhead mode

Use the [Alternative Letterhead Mode](#) feature to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all jobs, whether printing to one side of the sheet of paper or to both sides. When using this mode, load paper as for automatic duplex printing.

## Enable Alternative Letterhead Mode by using the printer control-panel menus

Use the [Settings](#) menu to set the [Alternative Letterhead Mode](#) setting.

- From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to and open the [Settings](#) menu.
- Open the following menus:
  - [Copy/Print](#) or [Print](#)
  - [Manage Trays](#)

c. Alternative Letterhead Mode

3. Select On.

## Load paper to the 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray

The following information describes how to load paper in the high-capacity input tray. This tray is part of the 1x550-sheet and 2,100-sheet high-capacity input feeder, which is included with the M632z and M633z models. This tray holds up to 2,100 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) paper.

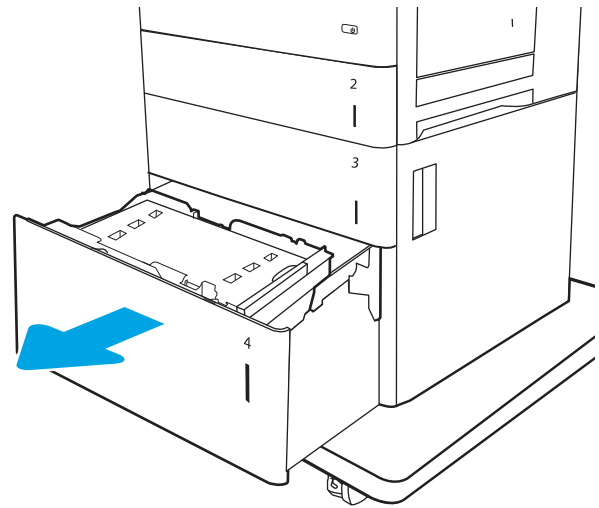
### Load paper to the high-capacity input tray

This tray holds up to 2,000 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) paper.

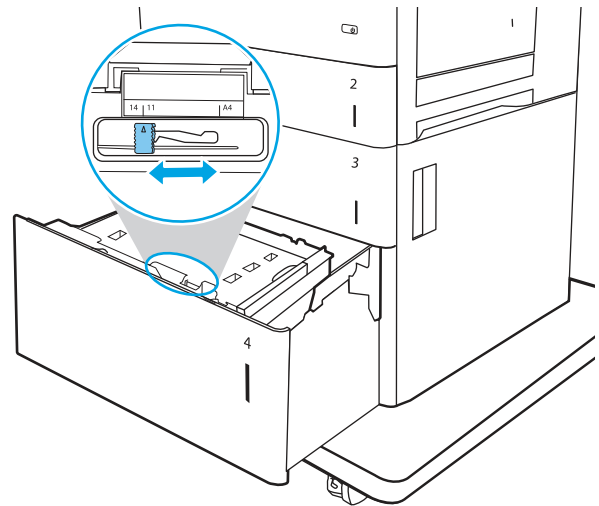
1. Open the tray.



**NOTE:** Do not open this tray while it is in use.



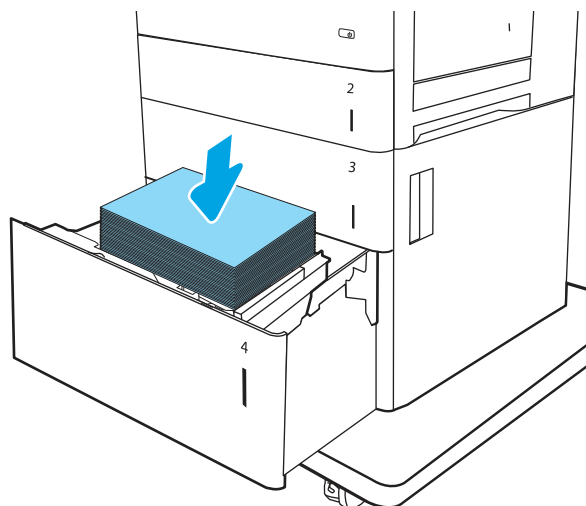
2. Adjust the paper-size lever to the correct position for the paper.



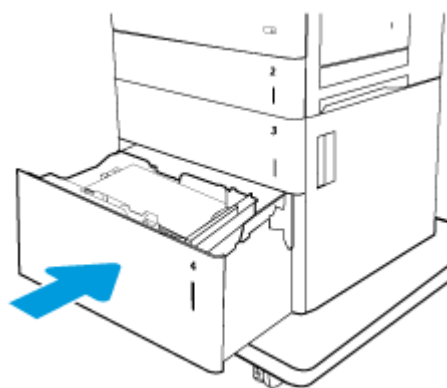
3.. Load paper into the tray.

 **NOTE:** To prevent jams, do not overfill the tray. Be sure that the top of the stack is below the tray full indicator.

 **NOTE:** If the tray is not adjusted correctly, an error message might appear during printing or the paper might jam.



4.. Close the tray.



5.. The tray configuration message displays on the printer control panel.

6.. Touch the **OK** button to accept the detected type and size, or touch the **Modify** button to choose a different paper size or type.

7.. Select the correct type and size, and then touch the **OK** button.

## Load and print envelopes

Review the following information about loading and printing envelopes.

### Print envelopes from Tray 1

Use Tray 1 or the envelope feeder accessory to print on envelopes.

Tray 1 holds up to 10 envelopes, depending on envelope design and environmental conditions.

To print envelopes using the manual feed option, follow these steps to select the correct settings in the print driver, and then load the envelopes into the tray after sending the print job to the printer.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.

2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click or tap the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.



**NOTE:** To access these features from a Windows 8 or 8.1 Start screen, select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

---

3. Click or tap the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. In the **Paper size** drop-down list, select the correct size for the envelopes.
5. In the **Paper type** drop-down list, select **Envelope**.
6. In the **Paper source** drop-down list, select **Manual feed**.
7. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box.
8. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **Print** button to print the job.

## Print envelopes from the envelope feeder accessory

Use the envelope feeder accessory to print on envelopes.

The envelope feeder accessory holds 75 envelopes, depending on envelope design and environmental conditions.

To print envelopes using the manual feed option, follow these steps to select the correct settings in the print driver, and then load the envelopes into the tray after sending the print job to the printer.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click or tap the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.



**NOTE:** To access these features from a Windows 8 or 8.1 Start screen, select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

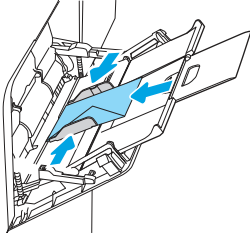
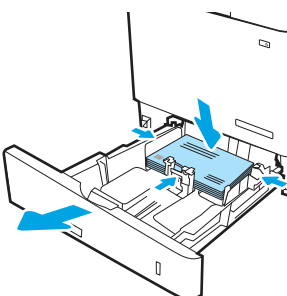
---

3. Click or tap the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. Complete one of the following steps:
  - In the **Paper size** drop-down list, select the correct size for the envelopes.
  - In the **Paper type** drop-down list, select **Envelope**.
  - In the **Paper source** drop-down list, select **Tray 3** or **Tray 4**—whichever tray corresponds to the envelope feeder.
5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box.
6. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **Print** button to print the job.

## Envelope orientation

Review the proper orientation for loading envelopes.

**Table 2-3 Envelope orientation**

| Tray                                                                                 | Envelope size                                                                                   | How to load                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Tray 1                                                                               | Envelope #9, Envelope #10, Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL | Face-down<br>Top edge toward the front of the printer |
|   |                                                                                                 |                                                       |
| Envelope feeder accessory                                                            | Envelope #9, Envelope #10, Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL | Face-up<br>Top edge toward the front of the printer   |
|  |                                                                                                 |                                                       |

## Load and print labels

To print on sheets of labels, use Tray 2 or the 550-sheet trays.

 **NOTE:** Tray 1 does not support labels.

To print labels using the manual feed option, follow these steps to select the correct settings in the print driver, and then load the labels into the tray after sending the print job to the printer. When using manual feed, the printer waits to print the job until it detects that the tray has been opened and closed.

### Manually feed labels

Use the manual feed mode to print sheets of labels.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.

 **NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

 **NOTE:** To access these features from a Windows 8.1 Start screen app, select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

 **NOTE:** To access these features from Windows 10, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. In the **Paper size** drop-down list, select the correct size for the sheets of labels.
5. In the **Paper type** drop-down list, select **Labels**.
6. In the **Paper source** drop-down list, select **Manual feed**.

---

 **NOTE:** When using manual feed, the printer prints from the lowest-numbered tray that is configured for the correct size of paper, so it is not necessary to specify a particular tray. For example, if Tray 2 is configured for labels, the printer will print from Tray 2. If Tray 3 is installed and configured for labels, but Tray 2 is not configured for labels, the printer will print from Tray 3.

---

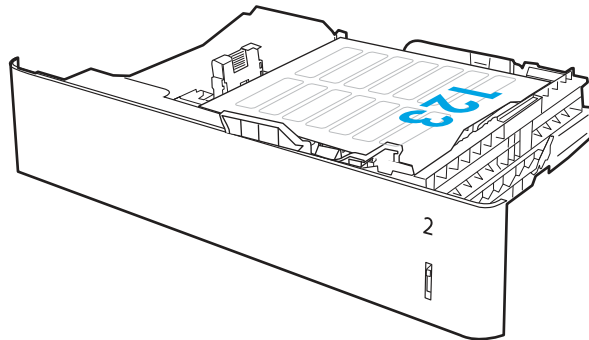
7. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box.
8. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **Print** button to print the job.

## Label orientation

Labels need to be loaded in a specific manner in order to print correctly.

**Table 2-4** Label orientation

| Tray      | How to load                                  |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------|
| Trays 2-5 | Face-up<br>Top edge at the right of the tray |



## Configure the stapling mailbox accessory

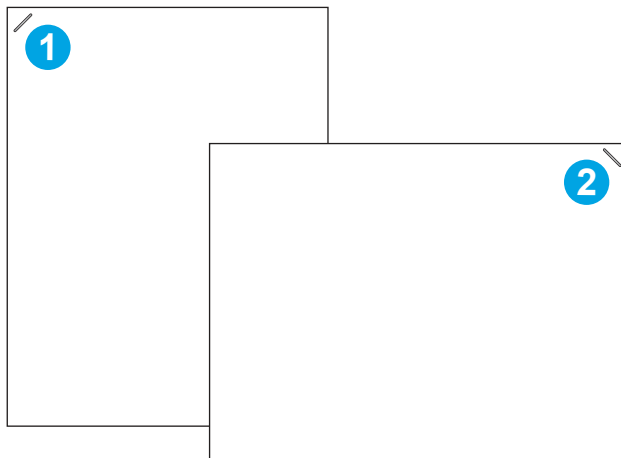
The following information describes how to load staples and configure the options for the stapling mailbox accessory.

The stapling mailbox accessory can staple documents in the upper left or upper right corners, and it can stack up to 1,000 sheets of paper in the three output bins. The output bins have three mode-configuration options: stacker mode, mailbox mode, or function separator mode.

## Configure the default staple location

Use this procedure to configure the default staple location.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then touch the [Settings](#) icon to open the menu.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Stapler/Stacker](#)
  - b. [Staple](#)
3. Select a staple location from the list of options, and then touch the [Save](#) button. The following options are available:
  - [None](#): No staples
  - [Top left or right](#): If the document has portrait orientation, the staple is in the top left corner of the short edge of the paper. If the document has landscape orientation, the staple is in the top right corner of the long edge of the paper.
  - [Top left](#): The staple is in the top left corner of the short edge of the paper.
  - [Top right](#): The staple is in the top right corner of the long edge of the paper.



| Number | Description                                    |
|--------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Top left corner of the short edge of the paper |
| 2      | Top right corner of the long edge of the paper |

## Configure the operation mode

Use this section to configure how the printer sorts jobs into the output bins.

### Set the operation mode

Use this procedure to set the operation mode.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then touch the [Settings](#) icon to open the menu.



2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Stapler/Stacker](#)
  - b. [Operation Mode](#)
3. Select a mode from the list of options, and then touch the [Save](#) button. The following options are available:
  - [Mailbox](#): The printer places jobs in different bins according to the person who sent them.
  - [Stacker](#): The printer stacks jobs in the bins from bottom to top.
  - [Function Separator](#): The printer places jobs in different bins according to printer function such as print jobs, copy jobs, or fax jobs.

## Configure the HP print driver for the operation mode

To configure the HP print driver for the selected operation mode, complete the following steps.



**NOTE:** Changing the operation mode causes the printer to restart.

Windows XP and Vista (Server 2003/2008) HP PCL6 drivers do not support output devices.

### Windows® 7

To configure the HP print driver for the selected operation mode, complete the following steps.

1. Make sure the printer is turned on and connected to the computer or a network.
2. Open the Windows® Start menu, and then click **Devices and Printers**.
3. Right-click the name of the printer, and then select **Printer Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Update Now**. Or, in the drop-down menu next to **Automatic Configuration**, select **Update Now**.

### Windows® 8.0, 8.1, and 10

To configure the HP print driver for the selected operation mode, complete the following steps.

1. Open the **Control Panel**:
  - **Windows 8, 8.1**: Right-click on the bottom-left corner of the screen.
  - **Windows 10**: Click the **Start** icon in the bottom-left corner of the screen and type `control panel`.
2. Select **Control Panel**. Under **Hardware and Sound**, select **View devices and printers**.
3. Right-click the name of the printer, and then select **Printer Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Update Now**. Or, in the drop-down menu next to **Automatic Configuration**, select **Update Now**.



**NOTE:** Newer V4 drivers do not support **Update Now**. For these drivers, manually configure the operation mode under **Accessory Output Bin**.

## macOS

To configure the HP print driver for the selected operation mode, complete the following steps.

1. From the Apple menu, click **System Preferences**.
2. Select **Print & Scan** (or **Printers & Scanners**).
3. Select the printer, and then select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Driver**.
4. Manually configure the **Accessory Output Mode**.

## 3 Supplies, accessories, and parts

Order supplies or accessories, replace the toner cartridges, or remove and replace another part.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

### Order supplies, accessories, and parts

Find out how to obtain replacement supplies, accessories, and parts for the printer.

#### Ordering

Order parts, supplies, or accessories through one of the following channels.

**Table 3-1** Ordering options

| Ordering option                              | Ordering information                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Order supplies and paper                     | <a href="http://www.hp.com">www.hp.com</a>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Order genuine HP parts or accessories        | <a href="http://www.hp.com/buy/parts">www.hp.com/buy/parts</a>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Order through service or support providers   | Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) | To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP website, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies. |

### Supplies and accessories

The following information lists supplies and accessories for the printer.

**Table 3-2** Supplies

| Item                                                            | Description                                     | Cartridge number | Part number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| HP 37Y Extra High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge | Extra high-capacity replacement toner cartridge | 37Y              | CF237Y      |

**Table 3-2 Supplies (continued)**

| Item                                                      | Description                                   | Cartridge number | Part number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| HP 37X High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge | High-capacity replacement toner cartridge     | 37X              | CF237X      |
| HP 37A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge            | Standard-capacity replacement toner cartridge | 37A              | CF237A      |
| HP Staple Cartridge Refill                                | Replacement staple cartridge                  | Not applicable   | C5967A      |

**Table 3-3 Accessories**

| Item                                                                  | Description                                                   | Cartridge number | Part number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1 GB Memory DIMM Kit                                                  | Memory upgrade kit                                            | Not applicable   | E5K48A      |
| HP LaserJet 550-sheet Paper Tray                                      | Optional input tray                                           | Not applicable   | J8J89A      |
| 1 x 550-sheet paper feeder with stand                                 | Optional input tray with stand                                | Not applicable   | J8J91A      |
| HP LaserJet 1x550-sheet feeder plus 2,100-sheet HCI feeder with stand | Optional input tray with high-capacity input feeder and stand | Not applicable   | J8J92A      |
| 3 x 550-sheet paper feeder with stand                                 | Optional input trays (three) with stand                       | Not applicable   | J8J93A      |
| HP LaserJet Envelope Feeder                                           | Optional envelope feeder input tray                           | Not applicable   | J8J90A      |
| HP Internal USB Ports                                                 | Optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices         | Not applicable   | B5L28A      |
| Mass storage: 500 GB HP High-Performance Secure Hard Disk             | Replacement hard drive                                        | Not applicable   | B5L29A      |
| HP Foreign Interface Harness (FIH)                                    | Optional interface portal                                     | Not applicable   | B5L31A      |
| HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 700                              | Analog fax accessory                                          | Not applicable   | CC487A      |
| HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server                                      | USB wireless print server accessory                           | Not applicable   | J8031A      |
| HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/ Wireless Accessory                            | Wireless accessory for "touch" printing from mobile devices   | Not applicable   | J8030A      |
| HP Trusted Platform Module Accessory                                  | Automatic encryption accessory                                | Not applicable   | F5S62A      |

## Maintenance/long-life consumables

The following information lists maintenance and long-life consumables for the printer.

**Table 3-4 Maintenance/long life consumables**

| Maintenance/LLC Kit              | Part number | Estimated life <sup>1</sup> |
|----------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| HP LaserJet 110V Maintenance Kit | J8J87A      | 225,000 pages*              |

**Table 3-4 Maintenance/long life consumables (continued)**

| Maintenance/LLC Kit               | Part number | Estimated life <sup>1</sup> |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| HP LaserJet 220V Maintenance Kit  | J8J88A      | 225,000 pages*              |
| HP 300 ADF Roller Replacement Kit | J8J95A      | 150,000 pages*              |

<sup>1</sup> HP Maintenance/Long Life Consumables (LLC) life specifications are estimations based on the LLC life test conditions listed below. Actual individual life/yield during normal use varies depending on usage, environment, paper and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied guarantee or warrantable.

\*The LLC life test conditions

- Print coverage: 5% evenly distributed across the page
- Environment: 17° to 25°C (62.6° to 77°F); 30%-70% relative humidity (RH)
- Media size: Letter/A4
- Media weight: 75 g/m2 (20 lb) plain media
- Job size: 4 pages
- Short edge feed (A3) (i.e., Legal size media)

Factors that can reduce life from the conditions above:

- Media narrower than Letter/A4 widths (thermal slow downs equal more rotations)
- Paper heavier than 75 g/m2 (20 lb) (heavier media creates higher stress on printer components)
- Print jobs smaller than 4 images (smaller jobs mean more thermal cycling and more rotations)

## Customer self-repair parts

Customer Self-Repair (CSR) parts are available for many HP LaserJet printers to reduce repair time.

More information about the CSR program and benefits can be found at [www.hp.com/go/csr-support](http://www.hp.com/go/csr-support) and [www.hp.com/go/csr-faq](http://www.hp.com/go/csr-faq).

Genuine HP replacement parts can be ordered at [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) or by contacting an HP-authorized service or support provider. When ordering, one of the following will be needed: part number, serial number (found on back of printer), product number, or printer name.

- Parts listed as **Mandatory** self-replacement are to be installed by customers, unless you are willing to pay HP service personnel to perform the repair. For these parts, on-site or return-to-depot support is not provided under the HP printer warranty.
- Parts listed as **Optional** self-replacement can be installed by HP service personnel at your request for no additional charge during the printer warranty period.

**Table 3-5 Consumer self-repair parts**

| Item                                                                            | Description                | Self-replacement options | Part number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit for Simplified Chinese and Traditional Chinese | Keyboard overlay for China | Mandatory                | A7W12A      |

**Table 3-5 Consumer self-repair parts (continued)**

| Item                                    | Description                 | Self-replacement options | Part number |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit Sweden | Keyboard overlay for Sweden | Mandatory                | A7W14A      |

## Configure the HP toner-cartridge-protection supply settings

A network administrator can configure the toner-cartridge-protection settings using the printer control panel or the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).

### Introduction

Use HP Cartridge Policy and Cartridge Protection to control which cartridges are installed in the printer and protect the cartridges that are installed from theft.

In HP Web Jetadmin, the settings are located under the **Device Management** pane in the following menu chain: **Config > Supplies > Cartridge Policy** or **Cartridge Protection**.

- **Cartridge Policy:** This feature protects the printer from counterfeit toner cartridges by allowing only genuine HP cartridges to be used with the printer. Using genuine HP cartridges ensures the best possible print quality. When someone installs a cartridge that is not a genuine HP cartridge, the printer control panel displays a message that the cartridge is unauthorized and it provides information explaining how to proceed.
- **Cartridge Protection:** This feature permanently associates toner cartridges with a specific printer, or fleet of printers, so they cannot be used in other printers. Protecting cartridges protects your investment. When this feature is enabled, if someone attempts to transfer a protected cartridge from the original printer into an unauthorized printer, that printer will not print with the protected cartridge. The printer control panel displays a message that the cartridge is protected, and it provides information explaining how to proceed.

 **CAUTION:** After enabling cartridge protection for the printer, all subsequent toner cartridges installed in the printer are automatically and *permanently* protected. To avoid protecting a new cartridge, disable the feature *before* installing the new cartridge.

Turning the feature off does not turn off protection for cartridges that are currently installed.

### Enable or disable the Cartridge Policy feature

The Cartridge Policy feature can be enabled or disabled using the control panel or the Embedded Web Server (EWS).



**NOTE:** Enabling or disabling this feature might require entering an administrator password.

Check with your administrator to determine if an administrator password has been set. EWS passwords cannot be recovered.

### Use the printer control panel to enable the Cartridge Policy feature

From the printer control panel, a network administrator can enable the Cartridge Policy feature. This allows only genuine HP cartridges to be used with the printer.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Supplies](#)
  - b. [Cartridge Policy](#)
3. Select [Authorized HP](#).

## Use the printer control panel to disable the Cartridge Policy feature

From the printer control panel, a network administrator can disable the Cartridge Policy feature. This removes the restriction that only genuine HP cartridges can be used.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Supplies](#)
  - b. [Cartridge Policy](#)
3. Select [Off](#).

## Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to enable the Cartridge Policy feature

From the EWS, a network administrator can enable the Cartridge Policy feature. This allows only genuine HP cartridges to be used with the printer.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the [Enter](#) key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 <https://10.10.XX.XXX>



**NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Open the **Copy/Print** tab.
3. From the left navigation pane, select **Manage Supplies**.
4. In the **Supply Settings** area, select **Authorized HP** from the **Cartridge Policy** drop-down list.
5. Click the **Apply** button to save the changes.

## Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to disable the Cartridge Policy feature

From the EWS, a network administrator can disable the Cartridge Policy feature. This removes the restriction that only genuine HP cartridges can be used.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Open the **Copy/Print** tab.
3. From the left navigation pane, select **Manage Supplies**.
4. In the **Supply Settings** area, select **Off** from the **Cartridge Policy** drop-down list.
5. Click the **Apply** button to save the changes.

## Troubleshoot Cartridge Policy control panel error messages

Review the recommended actions for Cartridge Policy error messages.

**Table 3-6** Cartridge Policy control panel error messages

| Error message                           | Description                                                                                                                                                       | Recommended action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.0X.30 Unauthorized <Color> Cartridge | The administrator has configured this printer to use only genuine HP supplies that are still under warranty. The cartridge must be replaced to continue printing. | Replace the cartridge with a genuine HP toner cartridge.<br><br>If you believe you purchased a genuine HP supply, visit <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/antcounterfeit">www.hp.com/go/antcounterfeit</a> to determine if the toner cartridge is a genuine HP cartridge, and learn what to do if it is not a genuine HP cartridge. |

## Enable or disable the Cartridge Protection feature

The Cartridge Protection feature can be enabled or disabled using the control panel or the Embedded Web Server (EWS).

 **NOTE:** Enabling or disabling this feature might require entering an administrator password.

Check with your administrator to determine if an administrator password has been set. EWS passwords cannot be recovered.

## Use the printer control panel to enable the Cartridge Protection feature

From the printer control panel, a network administrator can enable the Cartridge Protection feature. This protects the cartridges associated with the printer from being stolen and used in other printers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.



2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Supplies](#)
  - b. [Cartridge Protection](#)
3. Select [Protect Cartridges](#).
4. When the printer prompts to confirm, select [Continue](#) to enable the feature.

---

 **CAUTION:** After enabling cartridge protection for the printer, all subsequent toner cartridges installed in the printer are automatically and *permanently* protected. To avoid protecting a new cartridge, disable the feature *before* installing the new cartridge.

Turning the feature off does not turn off protection for cartridges that are currently installed.

---

## Use the printer control panel to disable the Cartridge Protection feature

From the printer control panel, a network administrator can disable the Cartridge Protection feature. This removes protection for any new cartridges installed in the printer.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Supplies](#)
  - b. [Cartridge Protection](#)
3. Select [Off](#).

## Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to enable the Cartridge Protection feature

From the EWS, a network administrator can enable the Cartridge Protection feature. This protects the cartridges associated with the printer from being stolen and used in other printers.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon  , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.



---

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

---

2. Open the **Copy/Print** tab.
3. From the left navigation pane, select **Manage Supplies**.
4. In the Supply Settings area, select **Protect cartridges** from the **Cartridge Protection** drop-down list.

- Click the **Apply** button to save the changes.

**CAUTION:** After enabling cartridge protection for the printer, all subsequent toner cartridges installed in the printer are automatically and *permanently* protected. To avoid protecting a new cartridge, disable the feature *before* installing the new cartridge.

Turning the feature off does not turn off protection for cartridges that are currently installed.

## Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to disable the Cartridge Protection feature

From the EWS, a network administrator can disable the Cartridge Protection feature. This removes protection for any new cartridges installed in the printer.

- Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

**NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

- Open the **Copy/Print** tab.
- From the left navigation pane, select **Manage Supplies**.
- In the Supply Settings area, select **Off** from the **Cartridge Protection** drop-down list.
- Click the **Apply** button to save the changes.

## Troubleshoot Cartridge Protection control panel error messages

Review the recommended actions for Cartridge Protection error messages.

**Table 3-7** Cartridge Protection control panel error messages

| Error message                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Recommended action                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 10.0X.57 Protected <Color> Cartridge | <p>The cartridge can only be used in the printer or fleet of printers that initially protected it using HP Cartridge Protection.</p> <p>The Cartridge Protection feature allows an administrator to restrict cartridges to work in only one printer or fleet of printers. The cartridge must be replaced to continue printing.</p> | Replace the cartridge with a new toner cartridge. |

# Replace the toner cartridges

Replace the toner cartridges if you receive a message on the printer, or if you are having print quality problems.

## Toner-cartridge information

The printer indicates when the toner-cartridge level is low and very low. The actual toner-cartridge life remaining can vary. Consider having a replacement cartridge available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable.

Continue printing with the current cartridge until redistributing the toner no longer yields acceptable print quality. To redistribute the toner, remove the toner cartridge from the printer and gently rock the cartridge back and forth end to end. Reinsert the toner cartridge into the printer and close the cover.

Table 3-8 Toner cartridge information

| Item                                                            | Description                                     | Cartridge number | Part number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| HP 37Y Extra High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge | Extra high-capacity replacement toner cartridge | 37Y              | CF237Y      |
| HP 37X High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge       | High-capacity replacement toner cartridge       | 37X              | CF237X      |
| HP 37A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge                  | Standard-capacity replacement toner cartridge   | 37A              | CF237A      |

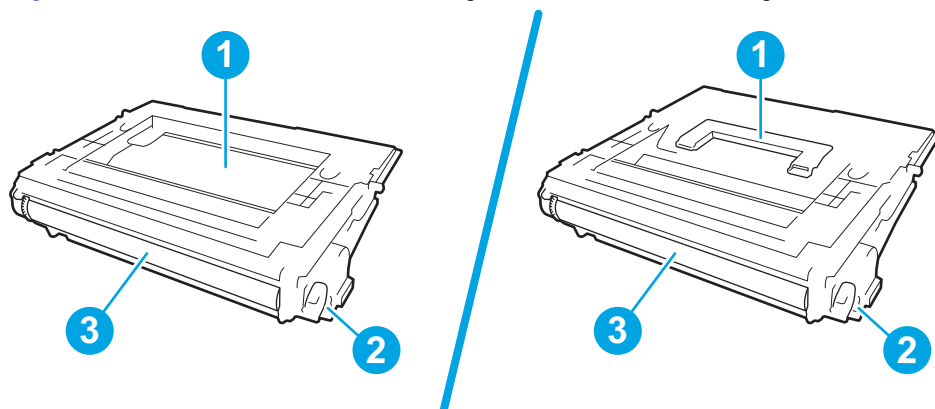
 **NOTE:** High-yield toner cartridges contain more toner than standard cartridges for increased page yield. For more information, go to [www.hp.com/go/learnaboutesupplies](http://www.hp.com/go/learnaboutesupplies).

Do not remove the toner cartridge from its package until it is time to replace it.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

The following illustration shows the toner-cartridge components.

**Figure 3-1** HP 37X and 37A toner cartridges / HP 37Y toner cartridge



| Number | Description                                                                                                                         |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Indentation for picking up the cartridge (37A/37X) or handle (HP 37Y Extra High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge only) |
| 2      | Memory chip                                                                                                                         |
| 3      | Imaging drum                                                                                                                        |

**CAUTION:** Do not touch the imaging drum. Fingerprints can cause print-quality problems.

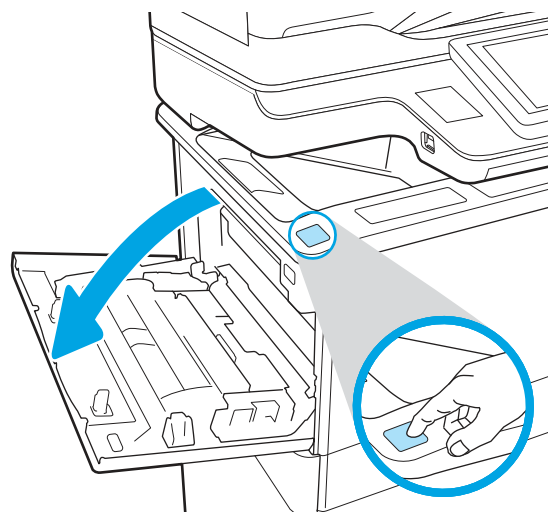
**CAUTION:** If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

**NOTE:** Information about recycling used toner cartridges is in the toner-cartridge box.

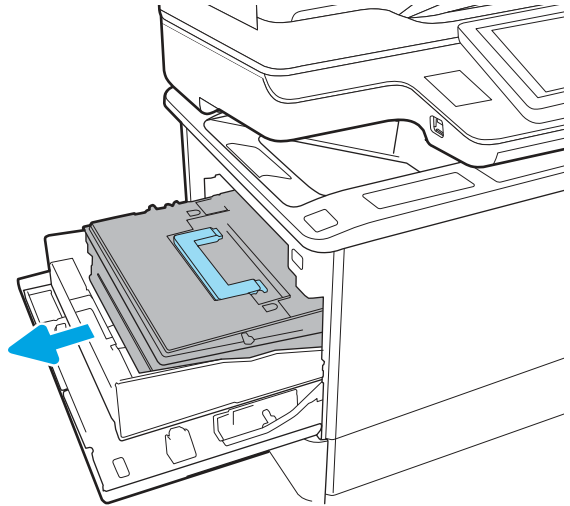
## Remove and replace the cartridge

Follow these steps to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

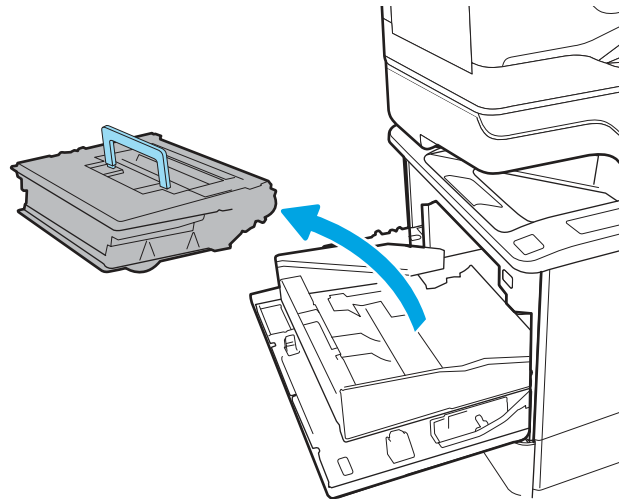
1. Press the cartridge door release button to open the door.



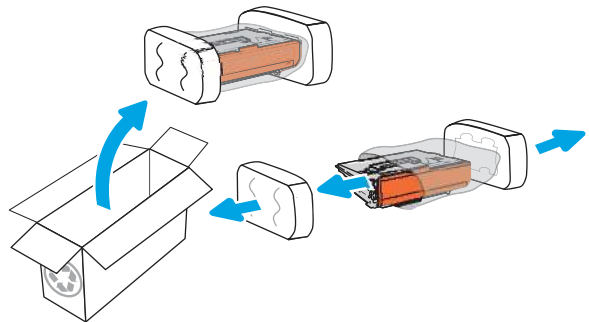
2. Pull out the cartridge drawer.



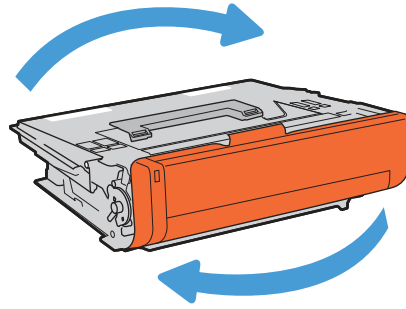
3. Grasp the handle or indentation of the used toner cartridge and pull up to remove it.



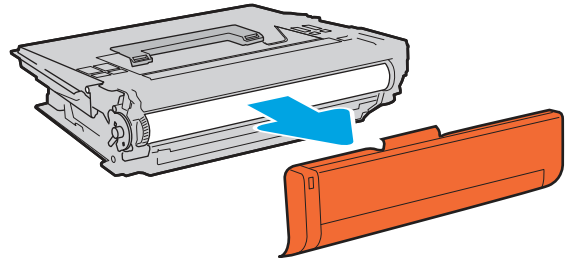
4. Remove the new toner cartridge from its protective bag.



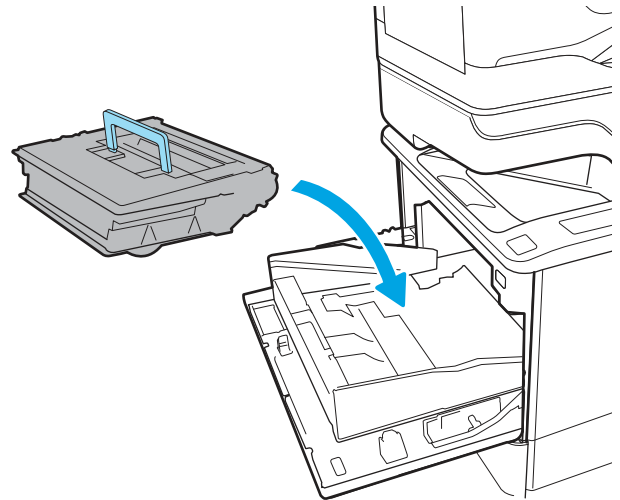
- 5.. Holding the toner cartridge on both ends, gently rock the cartridge end to end to distribute the toner evenly inside the cartridge.



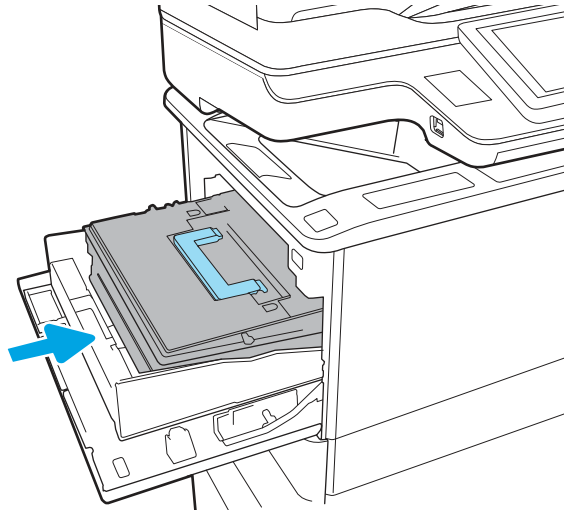
- 6.. Remove the cartridge shipping cover.



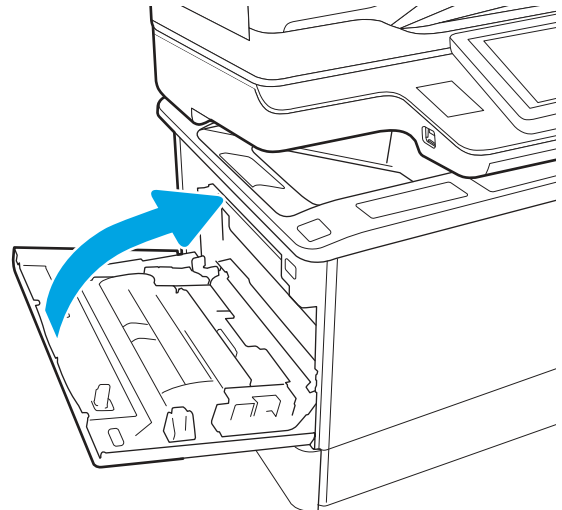
- 7.. Place the toner cartridge in the cartridge drawer.



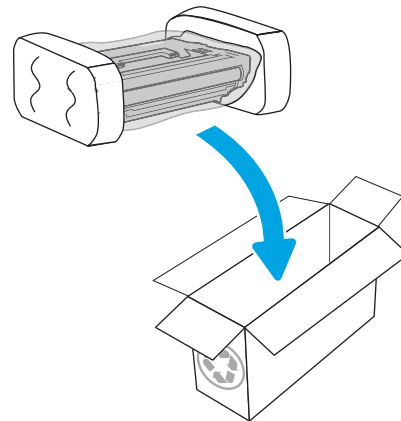
8. Close the toner cartridge drawer.



9. Close the cartridge door.



10. Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new cartridge came in. Adhere the prepaid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.



## Replace the staple cartridge (stapler models only)

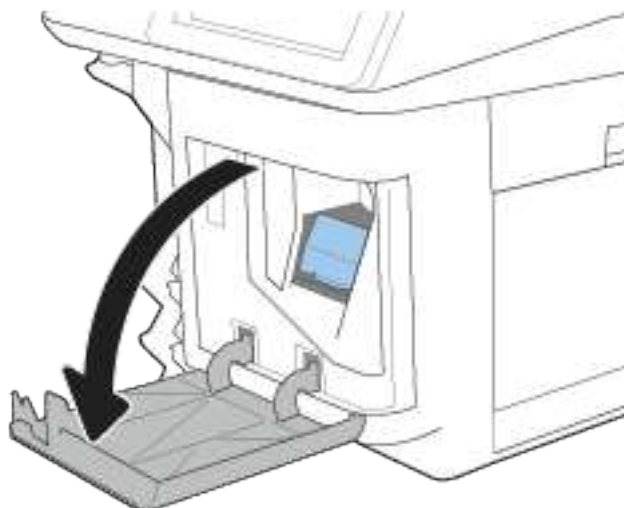
The following applies to models with staplers.

## Remove and replace the staple cartridge

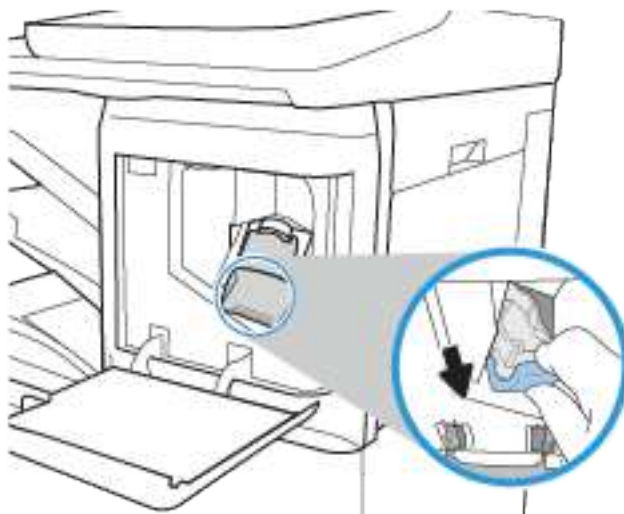
Use the following procedure to replace the staple cartridge.

1. Open the staple-cartridge door.

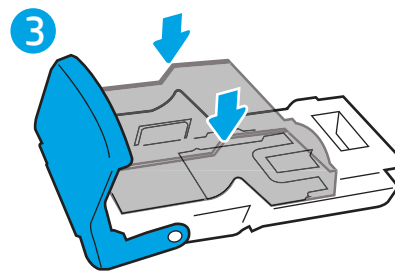
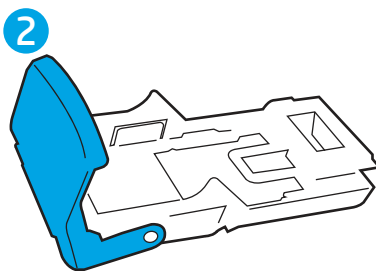
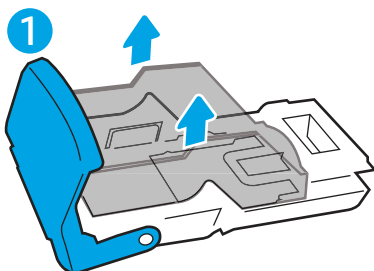
 **NOTE:** Opening the staple-cartridge door disables the stapler.



2. Grasp the colored tab on the staple cartridge, and then pull the staple cartridge straight out.

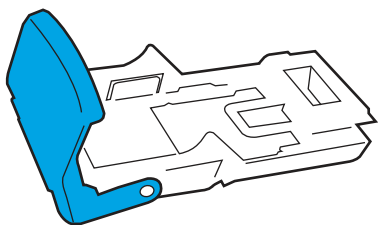


3. Remove the staple cartridge from the sled and replace it with the new staple cartridge.

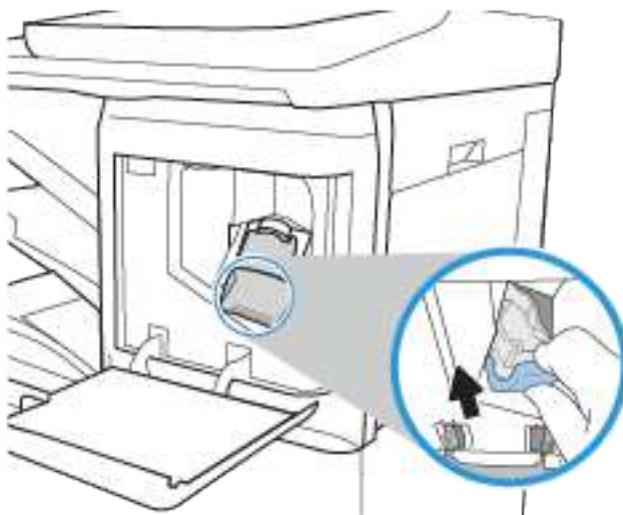


 **IMPORTANT:** Do not dispose of the staple carrier/sled. The sled is not an orderable or replaceable part.

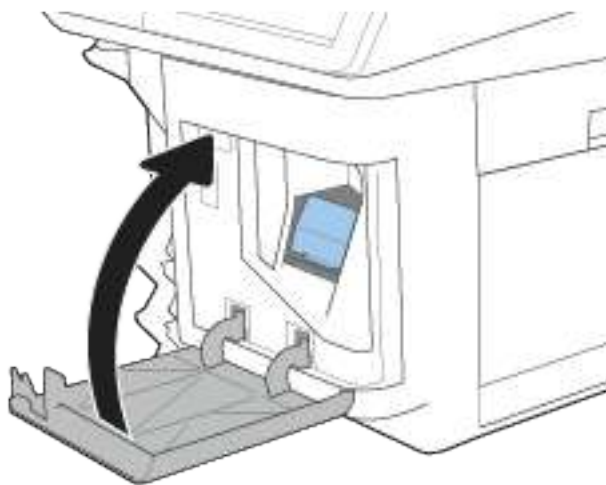




- 4.. Reinsert the full cartridge into the engine by pressing the colored handle toward the printer until it snaps into place.



- 5.. Close the staple-cartridge door



---

## 4 Print

Print using the software, or print from a mobile device or USB flash drive.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

### Print tasks (Windows)

Learn about common printing tasks for Windows users.

#### How to print (Windows)

Use the **Print** option from a software application to select the printer and basic options for your print job.

The following procedure describes the basic printing process for Windows.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers. To change settings, click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.



**NOTE:** For more information, click the Help (?) button in the print driver.

3. Click the tabs in the print driver to configure the available options. For example, set the paper orientation on the **Finishing** tab, and set the paper source, paper type, paper size, and quality settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. Click the **OK** button to return to the **Print** dialog box. Select the number of copies to print from this screen.
5. Click the **Print** button to print the job.

## Automatically print on both sides (Windows)

If your printer has an automatic duplexer installed, you can automatically print on both sides of the paper. Use a paper size and type supported by the duplexer.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.

---

3. Click the **Finishing** tab.
4. Select **Print on both sides**. Click **OK** to close the **Document Properties** dialog.
5. In the **Print** dialog, click **Print** to print the job.

## Manually print on both sides (Windows)

Use this procedure for printers that do not have an automatic duplexer installed or to print on paper that the duplexer does not support.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.

---

3. Click the **Finishing** tab.
4. Select **Print on both sides (manually)**, and then click **OK** to close the **Document Properties** dialog.
5. In the **Print** dialog, click **Print** to print the first side of the job.
6. Retrieve the printed stack from the output bin, and place it in Tray 1.
7. If prompted, select the appropriate control panel button to continue.

## Print multiple pages per sheet (Windows)

When you print from a software application using the **Print** option, you can select an option to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. For example, you might want to do this if you are printing a very large document and want to save paper.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.

---

3. Click the **Finishing** tab.
4. Select the number of pages per sheet from the **Pages per sheet** drop-down.
5. Select the correct **Print page borders**, **Page order**, and **Orientation** options. Click **OK** to close the **Document Properties** dialog.
6. In the **Print** dialog, click **Print** to print the job.

## Select the paper type (Windows)

When you print from a software application using the **Print** option, you can set the paper type you are using for your print job. For example, if your default paper type is Letter, but you are using a different paper type for a print job, select that specific paper type.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button to open the print driver.



**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.

---

3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. Select the paper type from the **Paper type** drop-down list.
5. Click **OK** to close the **Document Properties** dialog. In the **Print** dialog, click **Print** to print the job.

If the tray needs to be configured, a tray configuration message displays on the printer control panel.

6. Load the tray with the specified type and size of paper, and then close the tray.
7. Touch the **OK** button to accept the detected type and size, or touch the **Modify** button to choose a different paper size or type.
8. Select the correct type and size, and then touch the **OK** button.

## Additional print tasks

Locate information on the Web for performing common printing tasks.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

Instructions are available for print tasks, such as the following:

- Create and use printing shortcuts or presets
- Select the paper size, or use a custom paper size
- Select the page orientation
- Create a booklet
- Scale a document to fit a specific paper size
- Print the first or last pages of the document on different paper
- Print watermarks on a document

## Print tasks (macOS)

Print using the HP printing software for macOS, including how to print on both sides or print multiple pages per sheet.

## How to print (macOS)

Use the **Print** option from a software application to select the printer and basic options for your print job.

The following procedure describes the basic printing process for macOS.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then select other menus to adjust the print settings.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the item varies for different software programs.

---

4. Click the **Print** button.

## Automatically print on both sides (macOS)

If your printer has an automatic duplexer installed, you can automatically print on both sides of the paper. Use a paper size and type supported by the duplexer.



---

**NOTE:** This information applies to printers that include an automatic duplexer.

---



---

**NOTE:** This feature is available if you install the HP print driver. It might not be available if you are using AirPrint®.

---

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then click the **Layout** menu.

**macOS 10.14 Mojave and later:** Click **Show Details**, click **Two-Sided**, and then click the **Layout** menu.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the item varies for different software programs.

---

4. Select a binding option from the **Two-Sided** drop-down list.
5. Click the **Print** button.

## Manually print on both sides (macOS)

Use this procedure for printers that do not have an automatic duplexer installed or to print on paper that the duplexer does not support.



---

**NOTE:** This feature is available if you install the HP print driver. It might not be available if you are using AirPrint.

---

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then click the **Manual Duplex** menu.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the item varies for different software programs.

---

4. Click the **Manual Duplex** box, and select a binding option.
5. Click the **Print** button.
6. Go to the printer and remove any blank paper that is in Tray 1.

7. Retrieve the printed stack from the output bin and place it with the printed-side facing down in the input tray.
8. If prompted, touch the appropriate control panel button to continue.

## Print multiple pages per sheet (macOS)

When you print from a software application using the **Print** option, you can select an option to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. For example, you might want to do this if you are printing a very large document and want to save paper.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then click the **Layout** menu.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the item varies for different software programs.

---

4. From the **Pages per Sheet** drop-down list, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet.
5. In the **Layout Direction** area, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
6. From the **Borders** menu, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.
7. Click the **Print** button.

## Select the paper type (macOS)

When you print from a software application using the **Print** option, you can set the paper type you are using for your print job. For example, if your default paper type is Letter, but you are using a different paper type for a print job, select that specific paper type.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then click the **Media & Quality** menu or the **Paper/Quality** menu.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the item varies for different software programs.

---

4. Select from the **Media & Quality** or **Paper/Quality** options.



---

**NOTE:** This list contains the master set of options available. Some options are not available on all printers.

---

- **Media Type:** Select the option for the type of paper for the print job.
  - **Print Quality** or **Quality:** Select the resolution level for the print job.
  - **Edge-To-Edge Printing:** Select this option to print close to the paper edges.
5. Click the **Print** button.

## Additional print tasks

Locate information on the Web for performing common printing tasks.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

Instructions are available for print tasks, such as the following:

- Create and use printing shortcuts or presets
- Select the paper size, or use a custom paper size
- Select the page orientation
- Create a booklet
- Scale a document to fit a specific paper size
- Print the first or last pages of the document on different paper
- Print watermarks on a document

## Store print jobs on the printer to print later or print privately

Store print jobs in the printer memory for printing at a later time.

### Introduction

The following information provides procedures for creating and printing documents that are stored on the USB flash drive. These jobs can be printed at a later time or printed privately.

### Create a stored job (Windows)

Store jobs on the USB flash drive for private or delayed printing.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer from the list of printers, and then select **Properties** or **Preferences**.



---

**NOTE:** The name of the button varies for different software programs.

In Windows 10, 8.1, and 8, these applications will have a different layout with different features from what is described below for desktop applications. To access the print feature from a Start screen app, complete the following steps:

- **Windows 10:** Select **Print**, and then select the printer.
- **Windows 8.1 or 8:** Select **Devices**, select **Print**, and then select the printer.

For the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP AiO Printer Remote application downloads additional driver features when **More settings** is selected.

---

3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select a **Job Storage Mode** option:
  - **Proof and Hold:** Print and proof one copy of a job, and then print more copies.



- **Personal Job:** The job does not print until you request it at the printer control panel. For this job-storage mode, you can select one of the **Make Job Private/Secure** options. If you assign a personal identification number (PIN) to the job, you must provide the required PIN at the control panel. If you encrypt the job, you must provide the required password at the control panel. The print job is deleted from memory after it prints and is lost if the printer loses power.
  - **Quick Copy:** Print the requested number of copies of a job and store a copy of the job in the printer memory so you can print it again later.
  - **Stored Job:** Store a job on the printer and allow other users to print the job at any time. For this job-storage mode, you can select one of the **Make Job Private/Secure** options. If you assign a personal identification number (PIN) to the job, the person who prints the job must provide the required PIN at the control panel. If you encrypt the job, the person who prints the job must provide the required password at the control panel.
5. To use a custom user name or job name, click the **Custom** button, and then enter the user name or the job name.
- Select which option to use if another stored job already has that name:
- **Use Job Name + (1-99):** Append a unique number to the end of the job name.
  - **Replace Existing File:** Overwrite the existing stored job with the new one.
6. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **Print** button to print the job.

## Create a stored job (macOS)

Store jobs on the USB flash drive for private or delayed printing.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. In the **Printer** menu, select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**, and then click the **Job Storage** menu.



**NOTE:** If the **Job Storage** menu is not showing, follow the instructions in the "Disable or enable job storage feature" section to activate the menu.

4. In the **Mode** drop-down list, select the type of stored job.
  - **Proof and Hold:** Print and proof one copy of a job, and then print more copies. The first copy prints immediately. Printing of the subsequent copies must be initiated from the device's front control panel. For example, if 10 copies are sent, one copy prints immediately, and the other nine copies will print when the job is retrieved. The job is deleted after all copies are printed.
  - **Personal Job:** The job does not print until someone requests it at the printer control panel. If the job has a personal identification number (PIN), provide the required PIN at the control panel. The print job is deleted from memory after it prints.
  - **Quick Copy:** Print the requested number of copies of a job and store a copy of the job in the printer memory to print it again later. The job is deleted manually or by the job retention schedule.
  - **Stored Job:** Store a job on the printer and allow other users to print the job at any time. If the job has a personal identification number (PIN), the person who prints the job must provide the required PIN at the control panel. The job is deleted manually or by the job retention schedule.

5. To use a custom user name or job name, click the **Custom** button, and then enter the user name or the job name.



**NOTE:** **macOS 10.14 Mojave and later:** The print driver no longer includes the **Custom** button. Use the options below the **Mode** drop-down list to set up the saved job.

Select which option to use if another stored job already has that name.

- **Use Job Name + (1-99):** Append a unique number to the end of the job name.
  - **Replace Existing File:** Overwrite the existing stored job with the new one.
6. If you selected the **Stored Job** or **Personal Job** option in the **Mode** drop-down list, you can protect the job with a PIN. Type a 4-digit number in the **Use PIN to Print** field. When other people attempt to print this job, the printer prompts them to enter this PIN.
  7. Click the **Print** button to process the job.

## Print a stored job

Use the following procedure to print a job that is stored in the printer memory.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Print** application, and then select the **Print** icon.
2. Select **Print from Job Storage**.
3. Select the name of the folder where the job is stored, or select **Choose** to see the folder list.
4. Select the name of the job. If the job is private or encrypted, enter the PIN or password.
5. To adjust the number of copies, select the number of copies field. Use the keypad to enter the number of copies to print.
6. Select Start  or **Print** to print the job.

## Delete a stored job

You can delete documents that have been saved to the printer when they are no longer needed. You can also adjust the maximum number of jobs for the printer to store.

### Delete a job that is stored on the printer

Use the control panel to delete a job that is stored in the printer memory.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Print** application, and then select the **Print** icon.
2. Select **Print from Job Storage**.
3. Select the name of the folder where the job is stored or select **Choose** to see the folder list.
4. Select the name of the job. If the job is private or encrypted, enter the PIN or password.
5. Select the Trash button  to delete the job.

## Change the job storage limit

When a new job is stored in the printer memory, the printer overwrites any previous jobs with the same user and job name. If a job is not already stored under the same user and job name, and the printer needs additional space, the printer might delete other stored jobs starting with the oldest.

To change the number of jobs that the printer can store, complete the following procedure:

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **Copy/Print or Print**
  - b. **Manage Stored Jobs**
  - c. **Temporary Job Storage Limit**
3. Use the keypad to enter the number of jobs that the printer stores.
4. Select **OK** or **Done** to save the setting.

## Information sent to printer for Job Accounting purposes

Printing jobs sent from drivers on the client (e.g., PC) may send personally identifiable information to HP's Printing and Imaging devices. This information may include, but is not limited to, user name and client name from which the job originated that may be used for job accounting purposes, as determined by the Administrator of the printing device. This same information may also be stored with the job on the mass storage device (e.g., disk drive) of the printing device when using the job storage feature.

## Mobile printing

Mobile and ePrint solutions enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device.

### Introduction

HP offers multiple mobile printing solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device.

To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to [www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting](http://www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting).

## Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Direct Print, NFC, and BLE printing

HP provides Wi-Fi Direct Print, Near Field Communication (NFC), and Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) printing for printers with a supported HP Jetdirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accessory. This is an optional accessory.

These features enable Wi-Fi capable (mobile) devices to make a wireless network connection directly to the printer without using a wireless router.

The printer does not need to be connected to the network for this mobile walk-up printing to work.

Use Wi-Fi Direct Print to print wirelessly from the following devices:

- iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch using Apple AirPrint

- Android mobile devices using the Android embedded print solution

For more information on wireless printing, go to [www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting](http://www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting).

NFC, BLE, and Wi-Fi Direct Print capabilities can be enabled or disabled from the printer control panel.

## Enable wireless printing

To print wirelessly from mobile devices, Wi-Fi Direct must be turned on.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Settings** menu.
2. Select the following menus:
  - a. **Networking**
  - b. **Wi-Fi Direct**
  - c. **Status**
3. Select **On**, and then select **OK** to enable wireless printing.

## Change the Wi-Fi Direct name

Change the printer Wi-Fi Direct name using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).



**NOTE:** In environments where more than one model of the same printer is installed, it might be helpful to provide each printer a unique Wi-Fi Direct Name for easier printer identification for HP Wi-Fi Direct printing. The Wireless network names, e.g., Wireless, Wi-Fi Direct, etc. are available on the Information screen by selecting the Information icon , and then selecting the Wi-Fi Direct icon .

Complete the following procedure to change the printer Wi-Fi Direct name:

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Settings** icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **Networking**
  - b. **Wi-Fi Direct**
  - c. **Wi-Fi Direct Name**
3. Use the keypad to change the name in the **Wi-Fi Direct Name** text field, and then select **OK**.

## HP ePrint via email

Use HP ePrint via email to print documents by sending them as an email attachment to the printer's email address from any email enabled device.

To use HP ePrint via email, the printer must meet these requirements:

- The printer must be connected to a wired or wireless network and have Internet access.
- HP Web Services must be enabled on the printer, and the printer must be registered with HP Smart.

Follow this procedure to enable HP Web Services and register with HP Smart:

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):

- a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
- b. From a computer on the same network as the printer, open a web browser. In the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the Enter key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Click the **HP Web Services** tab.
3. Select the option to enable Web Services.

 **NOTE:** Enabling Web Services might take several minutes.

4. Go to [www.hpconnected.com](http://www.hpconnected.com) to create an account and complete the setup process.

## AirPrint

Direct printing using Apple's AirPrint is supported for iOS and from Mac computers running macOS 10.7 Lion and newer.

Use AirPrint to print directly to the printer from an iPad, iPhone (3GS or later), or iPod touch (third generation or later) in the following mobile applications:

- Mail
- Photos
- Safari
- iBooks
- Select third-party applications

To use AirPrint, the printer must be connected to the same network (sub-net) as the Apple device. For more information about using AirPrint and about which HP printers are compatible with AirPrint, go to [www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting](http://www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting).

 **NOTE:** Before using AirPrint with a USB connection, verify the version number. AirPrint versions 1.3 and earlier do not support USB connections.

## Android embedded printing

HP's built-in print solution for Android and Kindle enables mobile devices to automatically find and print to HP printers that are either on a network or within wireless range for Wi-Fi Direct printing.

The print solution is built into many versions of the operating system.

 **NOTE:** If printing is not available on your device, go to the [Google Play > Android apps](#) and install the HP Print Service Plugin.

For more information on how to use Android embedded printing and which Android devices are supported, go to [www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting](http://www.hp.com/go/MobilePrinting).

## Print from a USB flash drive

This printer features easy-access USB printing to print files without a computer.

The printer accepts standard USB flash drives in the USB port near the control panel. It supports the following types of files:

- .pdf
- .prn
- .pcl
- .ps
- .cht

### Enable the USB port for printing

The USB port is disabled by default. Before using this feature, enable the USB port.

Use one of the following methods to enable the port:

#### Method one: Enable the USB port from the printer control panel

Use the printer control panel to enable the USB port for printing.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Copy/Print](#) or [Print](#)
  - b. [Enable Device USB](#)
3. Select [Enable Print from USB Drive](#).

#### Method two: Enable the USB port from the HP Embedded Web Server (network-connected printers only)

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to enable the USB port for printing.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the [Enter](#) key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

A screenshot of a web browser address bar showing the URL "https://10.10.XX.XXX".

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

3. Select the **Copy/Print** tab for MFP models or the **Print** tab for SFP models.
4. In the left menu, select **Print from USB Drive Settings**.
5. Select **Enable Print from USB Drive**.
6. Click **Apply**.

## Print USB documents

Print documents from a USB flash drive.

1. Insert the USB flash drive into the easy-access USB port.



---

**NOTE:** The port might be covered. For some printers, the cover flips open. For other printers, pull the cover straight out to remove it.

---

2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Print** application, and then select the **Print** icon.
3. Select **Print from USB Drive**.
4. Select **Choose**, select the name of the document to print, and then select **Select**.



---

**NOTE:** The document might be in a folder. Open folders as necessary.

---

5. To adjust the number of copies, touch the box to the left of the **Print** button, and then select the number of copies from the keypad that opens. To close the keypad, select the Close button .
6. Select **Print** to print the document.

---

## 5 Copy

Make copies with the printer, learn how to copy a two-sided document, and locate additional copy tasks on the web.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

### Make a copy

Copy a document or picture from the scanner glass or automatic document feeder.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Copy** application, and then select the **Copy** icon.
3. To select the number of copies, touch the box next to **Copy**, use the keypad to enter the number of copies, and then touch the close keypad button .
4. Select **Optimize Text/Picture** to optimize for the type of image being copied: text, graphics, or photos. Select one of the predefined options.
5. Set options marked with a yellow triangle before using the preview feature.

 **NOTE:** After the preview scan, these options are removed from the main **Options** list and are summarized in the **Pre-scan Options** list. To change any of these options, discard the preview and start over.

Using the preview feature is optional.

---



6. Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. In the preview screen, use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 5-1** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view.                                                    |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                                                                     |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                               |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                       |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                           |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                    |

7. When the document is ready, touch **Copy** to begin copying.

# Copy on both sides (duplex)

Copy or print on both sides of the paper.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Copy](#) application, and then select the [Copy](#) icon.
3. In the [Options](#) pane, select [Original Side](#), and then select the option that describes the original document:
  - Use [Automatically detect](#) to detect whether the original is printed on one or both sides of the page.
  - Use [1-sided](#) for originals that are printed on one side of the page.
  - Use [2-sided \(book-style\)](#) for originals that flip on the right/left edge of the page, like books. If the image is portrait, the output flips on the long edge of the page. If the image is landscape, the output flips on the short edge of the page.
  - Use [2-sided \(flip-style\)](#) for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, like calendars. If the image is portrait, the output flips on the short edge of the page. If the image is landscape, the output flips on the long edge of the page.
4. Select [Output Sides](#), and then select one of these options:
  - [Match original](#): The output will match the format of the original. For example, if the original is 1-sided, the output will be 1-sided. However, if the administrator has restricted 1-sided printing and the original is 1-sided, the output will be 2-sided book-style.
  - [1-sided](#): The output will be 1-sided. However, if the administrator has restricted 1-sided printing, the output will be 2-sided book-style.
  - [2-sided \(book-style\)](#): The output will flip on the right/left edge of the page, like a book. If the image is portrait, the output flips on the long edge of the page. If the image is landscape, the output flips on the short edge of the page.
  - [2-sided \(flip-style\)](#): The output will flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, like a calendar. If the image is portrait, the output flips on the short edge of the page. If the image is landscape, the output flips on the long edge of the page.
5. Set options marked with a yellow triangle before using the preview feature.



**NOTE:** After the preview scan, these options are removed from the main [Options](#) list and are summarized in the [Pre-scan Options](#) list. To change any of these options, discard the preview and start over.

Using the preview feature is optional.

6. Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. In the preview screen, use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 5-2** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view.                                                    |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                                                                     |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                               |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                       |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                           |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                    |

7. When the document is ready, touch **Start** to begin copying.

## Additional copy tasks

Locate information on the Web for performing common copy tasks.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

Instructions are available for copy tasks, such as the following:

- Copy or scan pages from books or other bound documents
- Copy mixed-size documents
- Copy or scan both sides of an identification card
- Copy or scan a document into a booklet format

---

## 6 Scan

Scan using the software, or scan directly to email, a USB flash drive, a network folder, or another destination.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

### Set up Scan to Email

The printer has a feature that enables it to scan a document and send it to one or more email addresses.

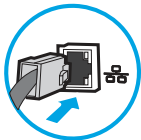
#### Introduction

To use this scan feature, the printer must be connected to a network; however, the feature is not available until it has been configured. There are two methods for configuring Scan to Email, the **Scan to Email Setup Wizard** for basic and **Email Setup** for advanced.

Use the following information to set up the Scan to Email feature.

#### Before you begin

To set up the Scan to Email feature, the printer must have an active network connection.



Administrators need the following information before beginning the configuration process.

- Administrative access to the printer
- DNS suffix (e.g., companyname.com)

- SMTP server (e.g., smtp.mycompany.com)

**NOTE:** If you do not know the SMTP server name, SMTP port number, or authentication information, contact the email/Internet service provider or system administrator for the information. SMTP server names and port names are typically found by doing an Internet search. For example, use terms like "Gmail smtp server name" or "Yahoo smtp server name" to search.

- SMTP server authentication requirements for outgoing email messages, including the user name and password used for authentication, if applicable.

**NOTE:** Consult your email service provider's documentation for information on digital sending limits for your email account. Some providers may temporarily lock your account if you exceed your sending limit.

## Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

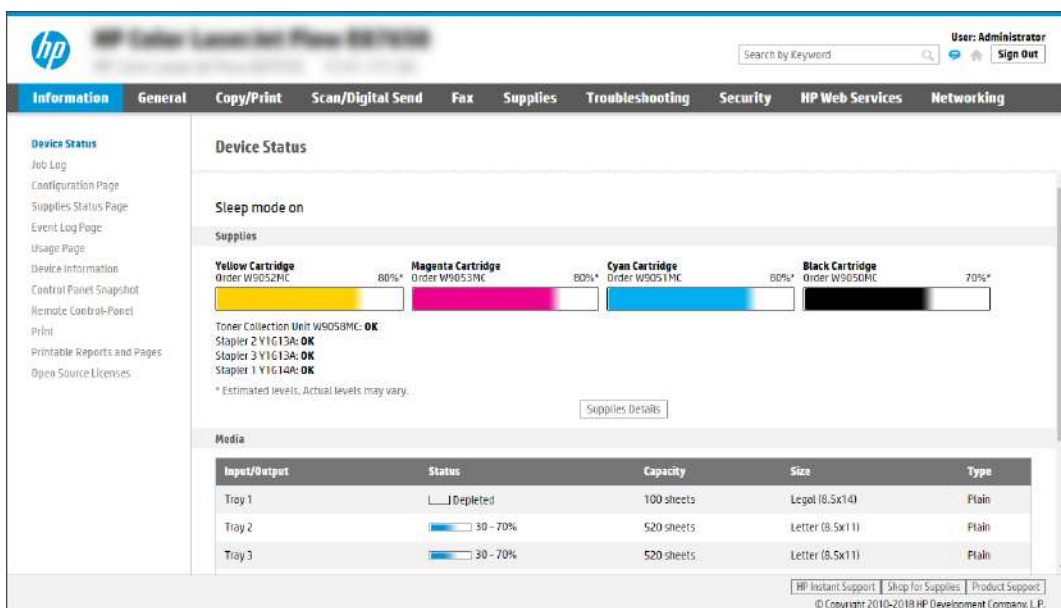
Open the EWS to start the setup process.

**NOTE:** The figure in this topic shows an EWS screen for a color printer. However, the procedure below is valid for both color and mono printers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

**NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.



| Input/Output | Status   | Capacity   | Size            | Type  |
|--------------|----------|------------|-----------------|-------|
| Tray 1       | Depleted | 100 sheets | Legal (8.5x14)  | Plain |
| Tray 2       | 30 - 70% | 520 sheets | Letter (8.5x11) | Plain |
| Tray 3       | 30 - 70% | 520 sheets | Letter (8.5x11) | Plain |

## Step two: Configure the Network Identification settings

Configure advanced setting for network identification.



**NOTE:** Configuring email setup on the **Networking** tab is an advanced process and might require the assistance of a system administrator.

1. Using the EWS top navigation tabs, click **Networking**.



**NOTE:** For configuring the network settings for use with Office 365, [Step five: Set up Send to Email to use Office 365 Outlook \(optional\) on page 80](#)

2. In the left navigation pane, click **TCP/IP Settings**. A username/password might be required to access the **Network Identification** tab of the EWS.
3. On the **TCP/IP Settings** dialog, click the **Network Identification** tab.
4. If DNS is required on the network, in the **TCP/IP Domain Suffix** area, verify that the DNS suffix for the email client being used is listed. DNS suffixes have this format: *companyname.com*, *gmail.com*, etc.

The screenshot shows the HP EWS interface for TCP/IP Settings. The 'Networking' tab is selected in the top navigation bar. On the left, 'TCP/IP Settings' is selected in the configuration pane. The 'Network Identification' sub-tab is active. A blue box highlights the 'TCP/IP Domain Suffix' section, which includes a 'DNS Suffixes' list and an 'Add' button. Other sections visible include 'WINS (IPv4 only)' with 'Primary' and 'Secondary' input fields, and 'Bonjour' with a 'Bonjour Service Name' field. 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are located at the bottom right of the dialog.



**NOTE:** If the Domain Name suffix is not set up, use the IP address.

5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

## Step three: Configure the Send to Email feature

The two options for configuring Send to Email are the **Email Setup Wizard** for basic configuration and **Email Setup** for advanced configuration. Use the following options to configure the Send to Email feature:

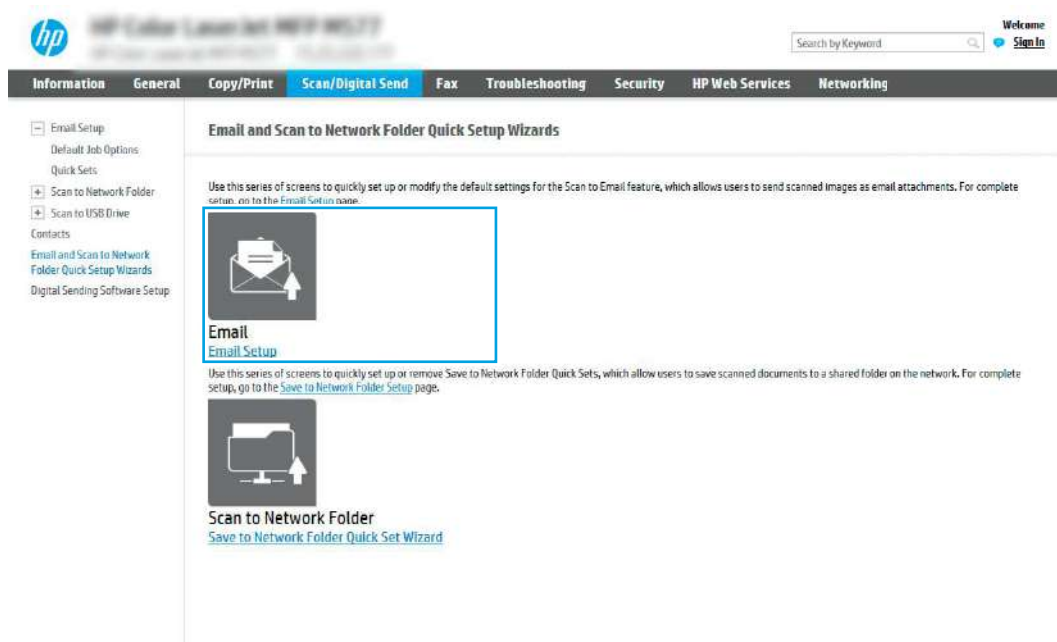
## Method one: Basic configuration using the Email Setup Wizard

Perform basic configuration using the Email Setup Wizard.

This option opens the **Email Setup Wizard** in the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) for basic configuration.

1. Using the EWS top navigation tabs, click **Scan/Digital Send**.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards**.
3. In the **Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards** dialog, click the **Email Setup** link.

 **NOTE:** If a message displays indicating that the Scan to Email feature is disabled, click **Continue** to proceed with the configuration and enable the Scan to Email feature upon completion.



4. On the **Configure Email Servers (SMTP)** dialog, select one of the following options and complete the steps:
  - Option one: Use a server already in use by Email.  
Select **Use a server already in use by Email**, and then click **Next**.
  - Option two: Search the network for the outgoing email server.  
This option finds outgoing SMTP servers inside your firewall only.
    - a. Select **Search network for outgoing email server**, and then click **Next**.
    - b. Select the appropriate server from the **Configure Email Server (SMTP)** list, and then click **Next**.
    - c. Select the option that describes the server's authentication requirements:
      - Server does not require authentication: Select **Server does not require authentication**, and then click **Next**.



-OR-

- Server requires authentication: From the drop-down list, select an authentication option:
  - Select **Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel**, and then click **Next**.

-OR-

- Select **Always use these credentials**, enter the **User name** and **Password**, and then click **Next**.

- Option three: Add the SMTP server.

a. Select **Add SMTP server**.

b. Enter the **Server Name** and **Port Number**, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** In most cases, the default port number does not need to be changed.



**NOTE:** If you are using a hosted SMTP service such as Gmail, verify the SMTP address, port number, and SSL settings from the service provider's website or other sources. Typically, for Gmail, the SMTP address is smtp.gmail.com, port number 465, and the SSL should be enabled.

Please refer to online sources to confirm these server settings are current and valid at the time of configuration.

c. Select the appropriate server authentication option:

- Server does not require authentication: Select **Server does not require authentication**, and then click **Next**.

-OR-

- Server requires authentication: Select an option from the **Server requires authentication** drop-down list:

- Select **Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel**, and then click **Next**.

-OR-

- Select **Always use these credentials**, enter the **User name** and **Password**, and then click **Next**.

5. On the **Configure Email Settings** dialog, enter the following information about the sender's email address, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** When setting up the **From**, **Subject**, and **Message** fields, if the **User editable** check box is unchecked, users will not be able to edit those fields at the printer control panel when sending an email.

**Table 6-1** Send email settings

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>From</b><br>(Required)    | Select one of the following options from the <b>From</b> drop-down list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>User's address (sign-in required)</b></li> <li>• <b>Default From:</b> Enter a default email address and display name in the <b>Default From Email Address</b> and <b>Default Display Name</b> fields</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Create an email account for the printer, and use this address for the default email address.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Configure the email feature so that users must sign in before using it. This prevents users from sending an email from an address that is not their own.</p> |
| <b>Subject</b><br>(Optional) | Provide a default subject line for the email messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Message</b><br>(Optional) | Create a custom message.<br><br>To use this message for all emails sent from the printer, clear the <b>User editable</b> check box for <b>Message</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

6. In the **Configure File Scan Settings** area, set the default scanning preferences, and then click **Next**.

**Table 6-2** Scan settings

| Option           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Type</b> | Select the default file type for the scanned document: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PDF</li> <li>• JPEG</li> <li>• TIFF</li> <li>• MTIFF</li> <li>• XPS</li> <li>• PDF/A</li> </ul> <p>HP LaserJet Enterprise Flow MFP printers or MFP printers that are connected to a digital send software (DSS) server also support the following OCR file types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Text (OCR)</li> <li>• Unicode Text (OCR)</li> <li>• RTF (OCR)</li> <li>• Searchable PDF (OCR)</li> <li>• Searchable PDF/A (OCR)</li> <li>• HTML (OCR)</li> <li>• CSV (OCR)</li> </ul> |

**Table 6-2** Scan settings (continued)

| Option                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Color/Black           | Select the default color setting for the scanned document: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Color</li><li>• Black</li><li>• Black/Gray</li><li>• Automatically detect</li></ul>                          |
| Quality and File Size | Select the default output quality for the scanned document: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Low (small file)</li><li>• Medium</li><li>• High (large file)</li></ul>                                     |
| Resolution            | Select the default scan resolution for the scanned document: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 75 dpi</li><li>• 150 dpi</li><li>• 200 dpi</li><li>• 300 dpi</li><li>• 400 dpi</li><li>• 600 dpi</li></ul> |

7. Review the **Summary** area, and then click **Finish** to complete the setup.

## Method two: Advanced configuration using the Email Setup

Use the following steps for advanced configuration using the **E-mail Setup** dialog in the EWS.

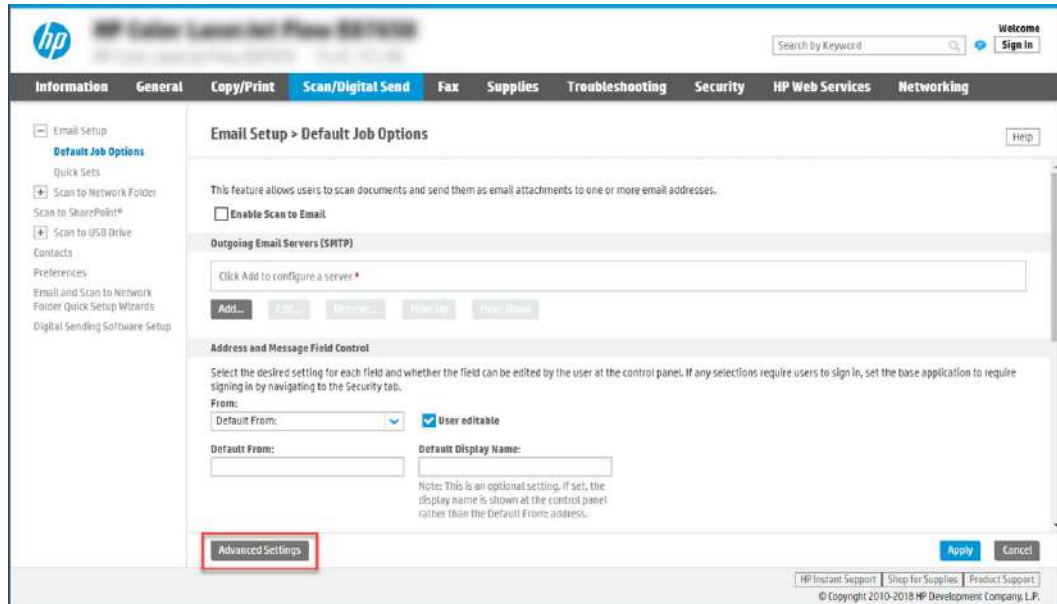
1. Using the EWS top navigation tabs, click **Scan/Digital Send**, expand the **Email Setup** menu in the left navigation pane, and then click **Default Job Options**.

The **Default Job Options** page displays the **Basic Settings** for Scan to Email setup. To access additional settings, click the **Advanced Settings** button at the bottom of the page. To switch back to basic settings, click the **Basic Settings** button.

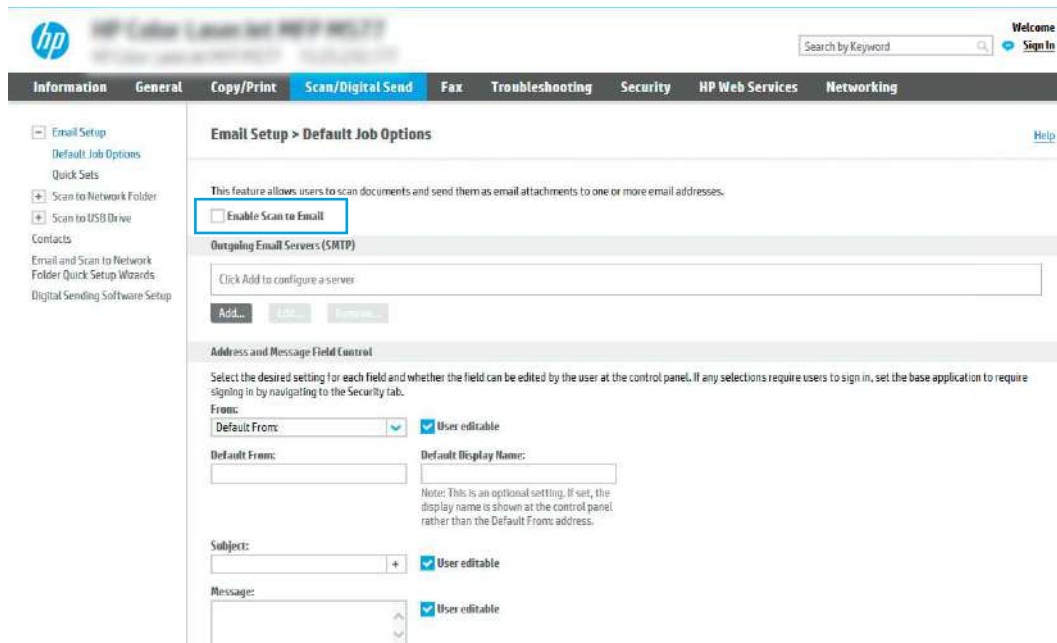


**NOTE:** This procedure covers the steps for **Basic Settings** first and then the steps for **Advanced Settings**.

Figure 6-1 Location of Advanced Settings button



2. On the **Default Job Options** page, select the **Enable Scan to Email** check box. If this check box is not selected, the feature is unavailable at the printer control panel.



3. In the **Outgoing Email Servers (SMTP)** area, complete the steps for one of the following options:
  - Select one of the displayed servers.
  - Click **Add** to start the SMTP wizard.
    - a. In the SMTP wizard, select one of the following options:
      - **Option one: I know my SMTP server address or host name:** Enter the address of an SMTP server, and then click **Next**

- **Option two:** If you do not know the address of the SMTP server, select **Search network for outgoing email server**, and then click **Next**. Select the server, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** If an SMTP server was already created for another printer function, the **Use a server already in use by another function** option displays. Select this option, and then configure it to be used for the email function.

- b. On the **Set the basic information necessary to connect to the server** dialog, set the options to use, and then click **Next**.
  - Some servers have problems sending or receiving emails that are larger than 5 megabytes (MB). These problems can be prevented by entering a number in **Split emails if larger than (MB)**.
  - In most cases, the default port number does not need to be changed. However, when using the Enable SMTP SSL Protocol option, port 587 must be used.
  - If you are using Google™ Gmail for email service, select the **Enable SMTP SSL Protocol** check box. Typically, for gmail, the SMTP address is smtp.gmail.com, port number 465, and the SSL should be enabled. Refer to online sources to confirm these server settings are current and valid at the time of configuration.
- c. On the **Server Authentication Requirements** dialog, select the option that describes the server's authentication requirements:
  - **Server does not require authentication**, and then click **Next**.
  - **Server requires authentication**
    - From the drop-down box, select **Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel**, and then click **Next**.
    - From the drop-down box, select **Always use these credentials**, enter the **Username** and **Password**, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** If using a signed-in user's credentials, set email to require sign in by the user on the printer control panel. Deny device guest access to email by clearing the check box for email in the **Device Guest** column in the **Sign in and Permission Policies** area on the **Access Control** dialog of the **Security** tab. The icon in the check box changes from a check mark to a lock.

- d. On the **Server Usage** dialog, choose the printer functions that will send email through this SMTP server, and then click the **Next** button.
 

If the server requires authentication, a user name and password for sending automatic alerts and reports from the printer will be required.
- e. On the **Summary and Test** dialog, enter a valid email address in the **Send test email to:** field, and then click **Test**.
- f. Verify that all of the settings are correct, and then click **Finish** to complete the outgoing email server set up.

4. In the **Address and Message Field Control** area, enter a **From:** setting and any of the other optional settings.

**Table 6-3 Address and Message Field Control (Basic Settings)**

| Feature                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>User editable</b>                                  | <p>To use the <b>Default From</b> address and <b>Default Display Name</b> for all emails sent from this printer (unless a user is signed in), clear the <b>User editable</b> check box.</p> <p>When setting up the address fields, if the <b>User editable</b> check box is cleared, users will not be able to edit those fields at the printer control panel when sending an email. For send-to-me functionality, clear the <b>User editable</b> check boxes for all of the address fields, including the <b>From:</b>, <b>To:</b>, <b>CC:</b>, and <b>BCC:</b> fields, and then set that user's send email <b>From:</b> their own email address and <b>To:</b> their own email address.</p> |
| <b>Default From:</b> and <b>Default Display Name:</b> | <p>Provide an email address and name to use for the <b>From:</b> address for the email message.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Create an email account for the printer, and use this address for the default email address.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Configure the email feature so that users must sign in before using it. This prevents users from sending an email from an address that is not their own.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Subject:</b>                                       | Provide a default subject line for the email messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Message:</b>                                       | Create a custom message. To use this message for all emails sent from the printer, clear or do not select the <b>User editable</b> check box for <b>Message:</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Table 6-4 Address and Message Field Control (Advanced Settings - optional)**

| Feature                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Address Field Restrictions</b>          | <p>Specify whether users must select an email address from an address book or whether users are allowed to enter in an email address manually.</p> <p><b>CAUTION:</b> If <b>Users must select from address book</b> is selected, and any of the address fields are also set as <b>User editable</b>, changes to those editable fields also change the corresponding values in the address book.</p> <p>To prevent users from changing contacts in the Address Book at the printer control panel, go to the <b>Access Control</b> page on the <b>Security</b> tab, and deny <b>Device Guest</b> access to address book modifications.</p> |
| <b>Allow invalid email address formats</b> | Select to allow an invalid email address format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>To:</b>                                 | Provide a To (recipient) email address for emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>CC:</b>                                 | Provide a CC email address for emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>BCC:</b>                                | Provide a BCC email address for emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

5. In the **File Settings** area, set the default file settings preferences.

**Table 6-5 File Settings (Basic Settings)**

| Feature          | Description                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Name</b> | <p>Default file name for the file to be saved.</p> <p>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.</p> |

**Table 6-5 File Settings (Basic Settings) (continued)**

| Feature                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Type</b>             | Select the file format for the saved file.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                 |
| <b>Resolution</b>            | Set the resolution for the file. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. |
| <b>Quality and File Size</b> | Select the quality for the file. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images, and they take more time to send.                                                                           |
| <b>Color/Black</b>           | Specify whether copies are to be printed in color, black and gray, or black only (color printers only).                                                                                                                 |

**Table 6-6 File settings (Advanced Settings - optional)**

| Feature                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Name Prefix</b>                                    | Set the default file name prefix used for files saved to a network folder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>File Name Suffix</b>                                    | Set the default file name suffix used for files saved to a network folder.<br><br>Duplicate filename suffix default [filename]_YYYYMMDDT                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>File Name Preview</b>                                   | Enter a file name, and then click the <b>Update Preview</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>File Numbering Format</b>                               | Select a file name format for when the job is divided into multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Add numbering when job has just one file (ex. _1-1)</b> | Select this setting to add numbering to a file name when the job is only one file instead of multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>High Compression (smaller file)</b>                     | Select this setting to compress the scanned file, which reduces the file size. However, the scanning process for a High compression file might take longer than for a Normal compression file.                                                                                                              |
| <b>PDF encryption</b>                                      | If the file type is PDF, then this option encrypts the output PDF file. A password must be specified as part of the encryption. The same password must be used to open the file. The user will be prompted to enter a password prior to scanning their job if one has not been set prior to pressing start. |
| <b>Suppress blank pages</b>                                | If the <b>Suppress blank pages</b> option is enabled, blank pages will be ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Create Multiple Files</b>                               | Select this setting to scan pages into separate files based on a predetermined maximum number of pages per file.                                                                                                                                                                                            |

6. Click the **Advanced Settings** button to display the following settings:

- **Signing and Encryption**
- **Notification** (job notification)
- **Scan Settings**

7. In the **Signing and Encryption** area, set the signing and encryption preferences.

**Table 6-7** Signing and Encryption settings

| Feature                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Signing</b>                                                          | Select whether to sign the email with a security certificate.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel. |
| <b>Hashing Algorithm</b>                                                | Select the algorithm to use for signing the certificate.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Encryption</b>                                                       | Select whether to encrypt the email.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                          |
| <b>Encryption Algorithm</b>                                             | Select the algorithm to use for encrypting the email.                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Attribute for Recipient Public Key</b>                               | Enter which attribute to use to retrieve the recipient's public key certificate from LDAP.                                                                                 |
| <b>Use the recipient public key certificate to verify the recipient</b> | Select this setting to use the recipient's public key certificate to verify the recipient.                                                                                 |

8. In the **Notification** area, select when users will receive notifications about sent emails. The default setting is using the signed in user's email address. If the recipient email address is blank, no notification is sent.
9. In the **Scan Settings** area, set the default scanning preferences.

**Table 6-8** Scan Settings

| Feature                      | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Original Size</b>         | Select the page size of the original document.                                                                                                     |
| <b>Original Sides</b>        | Select whether the original document is single-sided or double-sided.                                                                              |
| <b>Optimize Text/Picture</b> | Select to optimize the output of a particular type of content.                                                                                     |
| <b>Content Orientation</b>   | Select the way the content of the original document is placed on the page: <b>Portrait</b> or <b>Landscape</b> .                                   |
| <b>Background Cleanup</b>    | Select a value to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.                                                   |
| <b>Darkness</b>              | Select a value to adjust the darkness of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Contrast</b>              | Select a value to adjust the contrast of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Sharpness</b>             | Select a value to adjust the sharpness of the file.                                                                                                |
| <b>Image Preview</b>         | Select whether to require or make optional a displayed preview of the job or to disable a preview.                                                 |
| <b>Cropping Options</b>      | Select whether or not to allow a job to be cropped and the type of cropping option.                                                                |
| <b>Erase Edges</b>           | Select this setting to specify the width of edge margins to be erased, in either inches or millimeters, for the front side and back side of a job. |

10. Review the selected options to verify that they are accurate, and then click **Apply** to complete the setup.



## Step four: Configure the Quick Sets (optional)

Quick Sets are optional short-cut jobs that can be accessed on the main Home screen or within the Quick Sets application at the printer. Use the following procedure to configure the Quick Sets.

1. In the **Email Setup** area of the left navigation pane, click **Quick Sets**.
2. Select one of the following options:
  - Select an existing Quick Set under Quick Sets Application in the table.
  - OR-
  - Click **Add** to start the Quick Set Wizard.
3. If you selected **Add**, the **Quick Sets Setup** page opens. Complete the following information:
  - **Quick Set Name:** Enter a title for the new Quick Set.
  - **Quick Set Description:** Enter a description of the Quick Set.
  - **Quick Set Start Option:** To set how the Quick Set starts, click either **Enter application, then user presses Start** or **Start instantly when selected from the Home Screen**.
4. Define the following settings for the Quick Set: Address and Message Field Control, Signing and Encryption, Notification, Scan Settings, File Settings.
5. Click **Finish** to save the Quick Set.

## Step five: Set up Send to Email to use Office 365 Outlook (optional)

Enable the printer to send an email with an Office 365 Outlook account from the control panel.

### Introduction

Microsoft Office 365 Outlook is a cloud-based email system provided by Microsoft which uses Microsoft's Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) server to send or receive emails. Complete the following to enable the printer to send an email with an Office 365 Outlook account from the control panel.



**NOTE:** You must have an email address account with Office 365 Outlook to configure the settings in the EWS.

## Configure the outgoing email server (SMTP) to send an email from an Office 365 Outlook account

Configure the outgoing email server using the following procedure.

1. Using the EWS top navigation tabs, click **Networking**.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **TCP/IP Settings**.
3. In the **TCP/IP Settings** area, click the **Network Identification** tab.

4. If DNS is required on the network, in the **TCP/IP Domain Suffix** area, verify that the DNS suffix for the email client being used is listed. DNS suffixes have this format: *companyname.com*, *Gmail.com*, etc.

The screenshot shows the HP ePrint Web Services interface. The top navigation bar includes tabs for Information, General, Copy/Print, Scan/Digital Send, Fax, Troubleshooting, Security, HP Web Services, and Networking. The left sidebar lists various configuration options. The main content area is titled 'TCP/IP Settings' and has several sub-tabs: Summary, Network Identification (selected), TCP/IP(v4), TCP/IP(v6), Config Precedence, and Advanced. Under the 'Network Identification' tab, there is a checkbox for 'Enable DNS' which is checked. Below this is the 'TCP/IP Domain Suffix' section, which is highlighted with a blue box. It contains a list of 'DNS Suffixes' and an 'Add' button. Further down, the 'WINS (IPv4 only)' section has fields for 'Primary' and 'Secondary'. The 'Bonjour' section has a 'Bonjour Service Name' field. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

 **NOTE:** If the Domain Name suffix is not set up, use the IP address.

5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click the **Scan/Digital Send** tab.
7. On the left navigation pane, click **Email Setup**.

8. On the Email Setup page, select the **Enable Scan to Email** check box. If this check box is not available, the feature is unavailable at the printer control panel.

The screenshot shows the HP Control Panel interface for an HP Color LaserJet MFP M427. The 'Scan/Digital Send' tab is active. In the left sidebar, 'Email Setup' is expanded, and 'Default Job Options' is selected. The main content area is titled 'Email Setup > Default Job Options'. A note states: 'This feature allows users to scan documents and send them as email attachments to one or more email addresses.' Below this, the 'Enable Scan to Email' checkbox is checked and highlighted with a red box. Under the 'Outgoing Email Servers (SMTP)' section, there is a 'Click Add to configure a server' button and an 'Add...' button. The 'Address and Message Field Control' section allows users to select settings for 'From:', 'Subject:', and 'Message:' fields, with 'User editable' checkboxes checked for each.

9. In the **Outgoing Email Servers (SMTP)** area, click **Add** to start the SMTP wizard.
10. In the **I know my SMTP server address or host name** field, type `smtp.onoffice.com`, and then click **Next**.
11. On the **Set the basic information necessary to connect to the server** dialog, in the **Port Number** field, type `587`.



**NOTE:** Some servers have problems sending or receiving emails that are larger than 5 megabytes (MB). These problems can be prevented by entering a number in **Split emails if larger than (MB)**.

12. Select the **Enable SMTP SSL Protocol** check box, and then click **Next**.
13. On the **Server Authentication Requirements** dialog, complete the following information:
- Select **Server requires authentication**.
  - From the drop-down list, select **Always use these credentials**.
  - In the **Username** field, type the Office 365 Outlook email address.
  - In the **Password** field, type the Office 365 Outlook account password, and then click **Next**.
14. On the **Server Usage** dialog, choose the printer functions that will send email through this SMTP server, and then click the **Next** button.
15. On the **Summary and Test** dialog, enter a valid email address in the **Send a test email to:** field, and then click **Test**.
16. Verify that all of the settings are correct, and then click **Finish** to complete the outgoing email server setup.

For more information, go to [Microsoft's Support page](#).

## Set up Scan to Network Folder

Set up the Scan to Folder feature to scan documents directly to network folder.

### Introduction

This section explains how to enable and configure the Scan to Network Folder function. The printer has a feature that enables it to scan a document and save it to a network folder. To use this scan feature, the printer must be connected to a network; however, the feature is not available until it has been configured. There are two methods for configuring Scan to Network Folder, the **Save to Network Folder Setup Wizard** for basic setup and **Save to Network Folder Setup** for advanced setup.

### Before you begin

Have the following items available before you set up the Scan to Network feature.

 **NOTE:** To set up the Scan to Network Folder feature, the printer must have an active network connection.

Administrators need the following items before beginning the configuration process.

- Administrative access to the printer.
- The fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) (e.g., \\servername.us.companyname.net\scans) of the destination folder OR the IP address of the server (e.g., \\16.88.20.20\scans).

 **NOTE:** The use of the term "server" in this context refers to the computer where the shared folder resides.

### Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

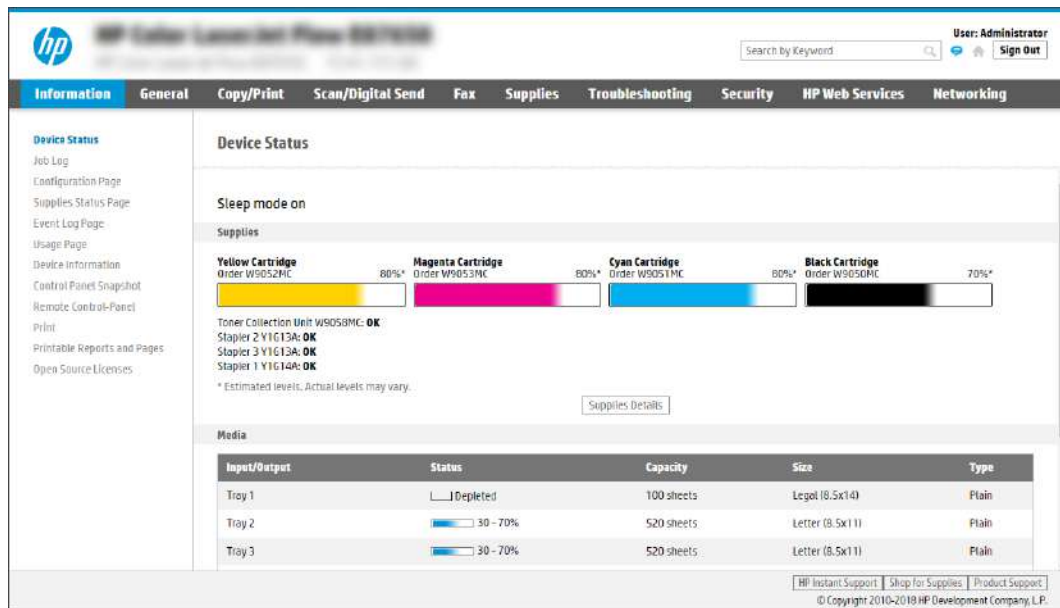
Open the EWS to start the setup process.

 **NOTE:** The figure in this topic shows an EWS screen for a color printer. However, the procedure below is valid for both color and mono printers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon  , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.



## Step two: Set up Scan to Network Folder

Set up Scan to Network Folder using one of the following methods.

### Method one: Use the Scan to Network Folder Wizard

Use this option for basic configuration of the Save to Network Folder feature using the Scan to Network Folder wizard.

 **NOTE:** Before you begin: To display the printer's IP address or host name, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Network icon  on the printer's control panel.

1. Using the EWS top navigation tabs, click **Scan/Digital Send** tab. The **Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards** dialog opens.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards**.
3. Click the **Save to Network Folder Quick Set Wizard** link.
4. On the **Add or Remove a Save to Network Folder Quick Set** dialog, click **Add**.

 **NOTE:** Quick Sets are shortcut jobs that can be accessed on the printer Home screen or within the Quick Sets application.

 **NOTE:** The Save to Network Folder feature can be minimally configured without creating a quick set. However, without the Quick Set, users must enter the destination folder information at the control panel for each scan job. A quick set is required to include Save to Network Folder metadata.

5. On the **Add Folder Quick Set** dialog, complete the following information:

- a. In the **Quick Set Title** field, type a title.

 **NOTE:** Name the Quick Set something that users can understand quickly (e.g., "Scan and save to a folder").

- b. In the **Quick Set Description** field, type a description explaining what the Quick Set will save.

- c. Click **Next**.
6. On the **Configure Destination Folder** dialog, complete the following information:
- a. In the **UNC Folder Path** field, type a folder path where the scan will go.
- The folder path can either be the fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) or the IP address of the server. Be sure that the folder path (e.g., `\scans`) follows the FQDN or IP address.
- FQDN example: `\\servername.us.companyname.net\scans`
- IP address example: `\\16.88.20.20\scans`
- 
-  **NOTE:** The FQDN can be more reliable than the IP address. If the server gets its IP address via DHCP, the IP address can change. However, the connection with an IP address might be faster because the printer does not need to use DNS to find the destination server.
- 
- b. From the **Authentication Settings** drop-down, select one of the following options:
- Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel
  - Always use these credentials
- 
-  **NOTE:** If **Always use these credentials** is selected, a user name and password must be entered in the corresponding fields, and the printer's access to the folder must be verified by clicking **Verify Access**.
- 
- c. In the **Windows Domain** field, type the Windows domain.
- 
-  **TIP:** To find the Windows domain in Windows 7, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **System**.
- To find the Windows domain in Windows 8, click **Search**, enter `System` in the search box, and then click **System**.
- The domain is listed under **Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings**.
- 
- d. Click **Next**.
7. On the **Configure File Scan Settings** dialog, set the default scanning preferences for the Quick Set, and then click **Next**.
8. Review the **Summary** dialog, and then click **Finish**.

## Method two: Use Scan to Network Folder Setup

This option enables advanced configuration of the Save to Network Folder feature using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) for the printer.

---

 **NOTE:** Before you begin: To display the printer's IP address or host name, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Network icon  on the printer's control panel.

---

### Step one: Begin the configuration

Use the following steps to begin Scan to Network Folder setup.

1. Click the **Scan/Digital Send** tab.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Scan to Network Folder Setup**.

## Step two: Configure the Scan to Network Folder settings

Use the following procedure to complete Scan to Network Folder setup.

### Step one: Begin the configuration

Use the following steps to begin configuration.

1. On the Scan to Network Folder Setup page, select the **Enable Scan to Network Folder** check box. If this box is not selected, the feature is unavailable at the printer control panel.
2. In the Scan to Network Folder area of the left navigation pane, click **Quick Sets**. Click **Add** to open the **Quick Sets Setup** dialog.



**NOTE:** Quick Sets are shortcut jobs that can be accessed on the printer Home screen or within the Quick Sets application.



**NOTE:** The Scan to Network Folder feature can be minimally configured without creating a Quick Set. However, without the Quick Set, users must enter the destination folder information at the control panel for each scan job. A Quick Set is required to include Scan to Network Folder metadata.

Complete all of the settings in the Quick Set Setup to fully configure the Scan to Network Folder feature.

### Dialog one: Set the Quick Set name, description, and options for user interaction at the control panel

Set the Quick Set details for user interaction at the printer's control panel.

Use the **Set the button location for the Quick Set and options for user interaction at the control panel** dialog to configure where the **Quick Set** button will display on the printer control panel and to configure the level of user interaction at the printer control panel.

1. In the **Quick Set Name** field, type a title.



**NOTE:** Name the Quick Set something that users can understand quickly (e.g., "Scan and save to a folder").

2. In the **Quick Set Description** field, type a description explaining what the Quick Set will save.
3. From the **Quick Set Start Option** list, select one of the following options:

- Option one: **Enter application, then user presses Start**.
- Option two: **Start instantly upon selection**.

Select one of the following prompt options :

- **Prompt for original sides**
- **Prompt for additional pages**
- **Require Preview**



**NOTE:** If **Start instantly upon selection** is selected, the destination folder must be entered in the next step.

4. Click **Next**.



## Dialog two: Folder Settings

Use the **Folder Settings** dialog to configure the types of folders the printer sends scanned documents to and the folder permissions.

There are two types of destination folders to select from:

- Shared folders or FTP folders
- Personal shared folders

There are two types of folder permissions to select from:

- Read and write access
- Write access only

## Configure the destination folder for scanned documents

Select one of the following options to set up a destination folder.

### Option 1: Configure the printer to save to a shared folder or FTP folder

To save scanned documents to a standard shared folder or an FTP folder, complete the following steps.

1. If it is not already selected, select **Save to shared folders or FTP folders**.
2. Click **Add....** The **Add Network Folder Path** dialog opens.
3. On the **Add Network Folder Path** dialog, select one of the following options:
  - Option one: **Save to a standard shared network folder**.

The screenshot shows the HP Web Services interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Information', 'General', 'Copy/Print', 'Scan/Digital Send' (selected), 'Fax', 'Troubleshooting', 'Security', 'HP Web Services', and 'Networking'. A search bar and 'Welcome Sign In' link are on the right. The left sidebar lists various setup options, with 'Scan to Network Folder' expanded. The main content area is titled 'Quick Sets Setup' and shows the 'Add Network Folder Path' dialog. The 'Save to a standard shared network folder' option is selected. The 'UNC Folder Path' field is empty, with a placeholder '(\\path\\path)'. The 'Custom Subfolder' field is also empty, with a placeholder 'Append a custom subfolder at end of the folder path.' and a 'Restrict subfolder access to user' checkbox. The 'Folder Path Preview' section shows a preview of the path and an 'Update Preview' button. The 'Authentication Settings' section has a dropdown menu set to 'Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel'. The 'Windows Domain' field is empty. At the bottom, there is an option to 'Save to an FTP Server' with a description: 'A Workstation or Server that has a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) service installed and configured.' The bottom right corner has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- a. If it is not already selected, select **Save to a standard shared network folder**.
- b. In the **UNC Folder Path** field, type a folder path.



The folder path can either be the fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) or the IP address of the server. Be sure that the folder path (e.g., `\scans`) follows the FQDN or IP address.

FQDN example: `\\servername.us.companyname.net\scans`

IP address example: `\\16.88.20.20\scans`



**NOTE:** The FQDN can be more reliable than the IP address. If the server gets its IP address via DHCP, the IP address can change. However, the connection with an IP address might be faster because the printer does not need to use DNS to find the destination server.

- c. To automatically create a subfolder for scanned documents in the destination folder, select a format for the subfolder name from the **Custom Subfolder** list.

To restrict the subfolder access to the user who creates the scan job, select **Restrict subfolder access to user**.

- d. To view the complete folder path for scanned documents, click **Update Preview**.
- e. From the **Authentication Settings** list, select one of the following options:
  - **Use credentials of user to connect after Sign In at the control panel**
  - **Always use these credentials**



**NOTE:** If **Always use these credentials** is selected, a user name and password must be entered in the corresponding fields.

- f. In the **Windows Domain** field, type the Windows domain.



**NOTE:** To find the Windows domain in Windows 7, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **System**.

To find the Windows domain in Windows 8, click **Search**, enter `System` in the search box, and then click **System**.

The domain is listed under **Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings**.



**NOTE:** If a shared folder is set to be accessed by everyone, values for a workgroup name (default is "Workgroup"), a user name, and password must be entered in the corresponding fields. However, if the folder is within a particular user's folders and not Public, the user name and password of that user must be used.



**NOTE:** An IP address might be necessary instead of a computer name. Many home routers do not handle computer names well, and there is no Domain Name Server (DNS). In this case, it is best to set up a static IP address on the shared PC to alleviate the problem of DHCP assigning a new IP address. On a typical home router, this is done by setting a static IP address that is on the same subnet, but outside the DHCP address range.

- g. Click **OK**.
- Option two: **Save to an FTP Server**.

The screenshot shows the HP EWS (Embedded Web Server) interface. The top navigation bar includes tabs for Information, General, Copy/Print, Scan/Digital Send (which is active), Fax, Troubleshooting, Security, HP Web Services, and Networking. On the left, a sidebar lists various setup options like Email Setup, Default Job Options, Quick Sets, Scan to Network Folder, Scan to USB Drive, and Contacts. The main content area is titled 'Quick Sets Setup' and contains the 'Add Network Folder Path' section. This section has two radio buttons: 'Save to a standard shared network folder' and 'Save to an FTP Server' (which is selected). Below the selected option, there are fields for 'FTP Server' (with a subtext 'A Workstation or Server that has a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) service installed and configured.'), 'Port' (with a default value of 21), 'FTP Folder Path' (with a subtext '(folder/subfolder)'), and 'Custom Subfolder' (with a subtext 'Appends a custom subfolder at end of the folder path.'). There is also a 'Folder Path Preview' section with an 'Update Preview' button. Below that, the 'FTP Transfer Mode' is set to 'Passive' with a dropdown arrow. A note states 'This is an advanced setting.' Below this are fields for 'User Name' and 'Password', followed by a 'Verify Access' button. At the bottom right of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. The footer of the page includes 'HP Instant Support | Shop for Supplies | Product Support' and a copyright notice '© Copyright 2010-2016 HP Development Company, L.P.'.

 **NOTE:** If an FTP site is outside the firewall, a proxy server must be specified under the network settings. These settings are located in the **EWS Networking** tab, under the **Advanced** options.

- a. Select **Save to an FTP Server**.
- b. In the **FTP Server** field, type the FTP server name or IP address.
- c. In the **Port** field, type the port number.

 **NOTE:** In most cases, the default port number does not need to be changed.

- d. To automatically create a subfolder for scanned documents in the destination folder, select a format for the subfolder name from the **Custom Subfolder** list.
- e. To view the complete folder path for scanned documents, click **Update Preview**.
- f. From the **FTP Transfer Mode** list, select one of the following options:
  - **Passive**
  - **Active**
- g. In the **Username** field, type the user name.
- h. In the **Password** field, type the password.
- i. Click **Verify Access** to confirm the destination can be accessed.
- j. Click **OK**.

### Option 2: Configure the printer to save to a personal shared folder

To save scanned documents to a personal shared folder, complete the following steps.



---

**NOTE:** This option is used in domain environments where the administrator configures a shared folder for each user. If the Save to a personal shared folder feature is configured, users will be required to sign in at the printer control panel using Windows credentials or LDAP authentication.

---

1. Select **Save to a personal shared folder**.
2. In the **Retrieve the device user's home folder using this attribute** field, type the user's home folder in the Microsoft Active Directory.



---

**NOTE:** Verify that the user knows where this home folder is located on the network.

---

3. To add a user name subfolder at the end of the folder path, select **Create subfolder based on user name**.

To restrict the subfolder access to the user who creates the scan job, select **Restrict subfolder access to user**.

### Select the destination folder permissions

Select one of the following options to set up destination folder permissions.

#### Option 1: Configure read and write access

To send scanned documents to a folder configured for read and write access, complete the following steps.



---

**NOTE:** **Send only to folders with read and write access** supports folder verification and job notification.

---

1. If it is not already selected, select **Send only to folders with read and write access**.
2. To require the printer to verify folder access before starting a scan job, select **Verify folder access prior to job start**.



---

**NOTE:** Scan jobs can complete more quickly if **Verify folder access prior to job start** is not selected; however, if the folder is unavailable, the scan job will fail.

---

3. Click **Next**.

#### Option 2: Configure write access only

To send scanned documents to a folder configured for write access only, complete the following steps.



---

**NOTE:** **Allow sending to folders with write access only** does not support folder verification or job notification.

---



---

**NOTE:** If this option is selected, the printer cannot increment the scan filename. It sends the same filename for all scans.

---

Select a time-related filename prefix or suffix for the scan filename, so that each scan is saved as a unique file, and does not overwrite a previous file. This filename is determined by the information in the **File Settings** dialog in the Quick Set Wizard.

---

1. Select **Allow sending to folders with write access only**.
2. Click **Next**.

### Dialog three: Notification Settings

Use the **Notification Settings** dialog to configure when notifications will be sent.

- On the **Notification Settings** dialog, complete one of the following tasks:
  - Option one: **Do not notify**.
    - a. Select **Do not notify**.
    - b. To prompt the user to review their notification settings, select **Prompt user prior to job start**, and then click **Next**.
  - Option two: **Notify when job completes**.
    - a. Select **Notify when job completes**.
    - b. Select the method for delivering the notification from the **Method Used to Deliver Notification** list.  
  
If the method of notification selected is **Email**, type the email address in the **Notification Email Address** field.
    - c. To include a thumbnail of the first scanned page in the notification, select **Include Thumbnail**.
    - d. To prompt the user to review their notification settings, select **Prompt user prior to job start**, and then click **Next**.
  - Option three: **Notify only if job fails**.
    - a. Select **Notify only if job fails**.
    - b. Select the method for delivering the notification from the **Method Used to Deliver Notification** list.  
  
If the method of notification selected is **Email**, type the email address in the **Notification Email Address** field.
    - c. To include a thumbnail of the first scanned page in the notification, select **Include Thumbnail**.
    - d. To prompt the user to review their notification settings, select **Prompt user prior to job start**, and then click **Next**.

### Dialog four: Scan Settings

Complete the scan settings as follows.

On the **Scan Settings** dialog, set the default scanning preferences for the Quick Set, and then click **Next**.

**Table 6-9** Scan settings

| Feature                      | Description                                                           |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Original Size</b>         | Select the page size of the original document.                        |
| <b>Original Sides</b>        | Select whether the original document is single-sided or double-sided. |
| <b>Optimize Text/Picture</b> | Select to optimize for the output of a particular type of content.    |

**Table 6-9 Scan settings (continued)**

| Feature                    | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Content Orientation</b> | Select the way the content of the original document is placed on the page: <b>Portrait</b> or <b>Landscape</b> .                                   |
| <b>Background Cleanup</b>  | Select a value to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.                                                   |
| <b>Darkness</b>            | Select a value to adjust the darkness of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Contrast</b>            | Select a value to adjust the contrast of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Sharpness</b>           | Select a value to adjust the sharpness of the file.                                                                                                |
| <b>Image Preview</b>       | Select whether to require or make optional a displayed preview of the job or to disable a preview.                                                 |
| <b>Cropping Options</b>    | Select whether or not to allow a job to be cropped and the type of cropping option.                                                                |
| <b>Erase Edges</b>         | Select this setting to specify the width of edge margins to be erased, in either inches or millimeters, for the front side and back side of a job. |

### Dialog five: File Settings

Complete the file settings as follows.

On the **File Settings** dialog, set the default file settings for the Quick Set, and then click **Next**.

**Table 6-10 File settings**

| Feature                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Name Prefix</b>                                    | Set the default file name prefix used for files saved to a network folder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>File Name</b>                                           | Default file name for the file to be saved.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>File Name Suffix</b>                                    | Set the default file name suffix used for files saved to a network folder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>File Name Preview</b>                                   | Enter a file name, and then click the <b>Update Preview</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>File Numbering Format</b>                               | Select a file name format for when the job is divided into multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Add numbering when job has just one file (ex. _1-1)</b> | Select this setting to add numbering to a file name when the job is only one file instead of multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>File Type</b>                                           | Select the file format for the saved file.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>High Compression (smaller file)</b>                     | Select this setting to compress the scanned file, which reduces the file size. However, the scanning process for a High compression file might take longer than for a Normal compression file.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>PDF encryption</b>                                      | If the file type is PDF, then this option encrypts the output PDF file. A password must be specified as part of the encryption. The same password must be used to open the file. The user will be prompted to enter a password prior to scanning their job if one has not been set prior to starting the scan. |
| <b>Resolution</b>                                          | Set the resolution for the file. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller.                                                                                        |

**Table 6-10 File settings (continued)**

| Feature                      | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Quality and File Size</b> | Select the quality for the file. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images, and they take more time to send. |
| <b>Color/Black</b>           | Specify whether copies are to be printed in color, black and gray, or black only.                                                             |
| <b>Suppress blank pages</b>  | If the <b>Suppress blank pages</b> option is enabled, blank pages will be ignored.                                                            |
| <b>Metadata File Format</b>  | Use the drop-down list to select the file format for metadata information.                                                                    |
| <b>Create Multiple Files</b> | Select this setting to scan pages into separate files based on a predetermined maximum number of pages per file.                              |

### Dialog six: Summary

On the **Summary** dialog, review the **Summary** dialog, and then click **Finish**.

### Step three: Complete the configuration

Use the following steps to complete Scan to Network Folder setup.

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Scan to Network Folder**.
2. On the Scan to Network Folder page, review the selected settings, and then click **Apply** to complete the setup.

## Set up Scan to SharePoint

Use Scan to SharePoint to scan documents directly to a Microsoft SharePoint site. This feature eliminates the need to scan the documents to a network folder, USB flash drive, or email message, and then manually upload the files to the SharePoint site.

### Introduction

Set up the Scan to SharePoint feature, and then scan documents directly to a SharePoint site.

Scan to SharePoint supports all scanning options, including the ability to scan documents as images or use the OCR features to create text files or searchable PDFs.

The feature is disabled by default. Enable **Save to Sharepoint** in the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).

### Before you begin

Before this procedure can be completed, the destination folder that the scanned files will be saved to must exist on the SharePoint site, and write access must be enabled to the destination folder. Scan to SharePoint is disabled by default.

### Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Open the EWS to start the setup process.

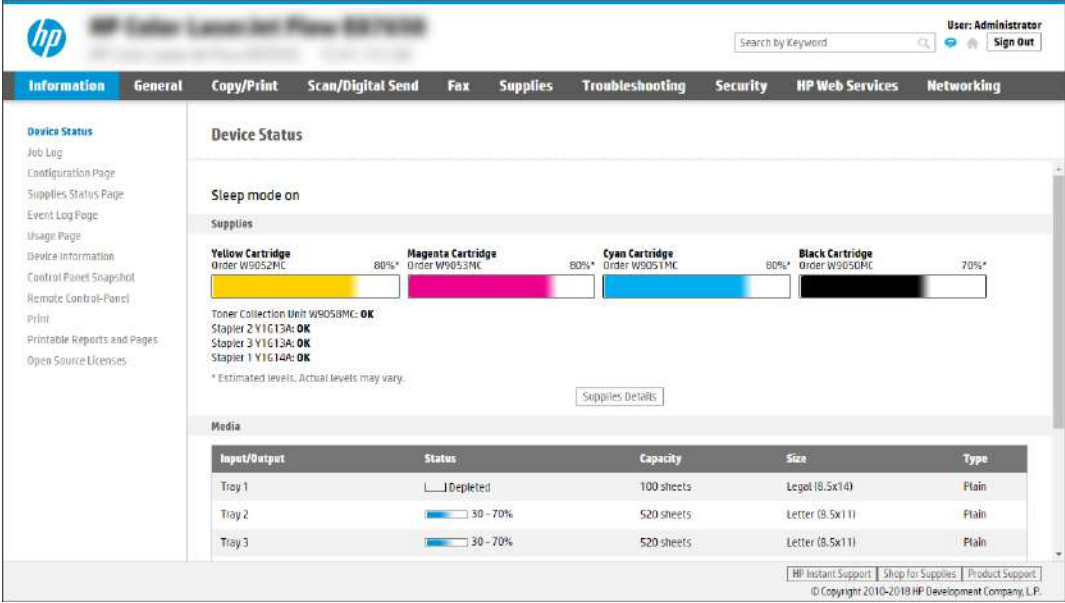


**NOTE:** The figure in this topic shows an EWS screen for a color printer. However, the procedure below is valid for both color and mono printers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.



## Step two: Enable Scan to SharePoint and create a Scan to SharePoint Quick Set

Follow the steps to enable the Scan to SharePoint feature and create a Scan to SharePoint Quick Set.

1. Using the top navigation tabs, click **Scan/Digital Send**.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Scan to SharePoint®**.

 **NOTE:** Quick Sets are shortcut jobs that can be accessed on the printer Home screen or within the **Quick Sets** application.

3. Select **Enable Scan to SharePoint®**, and then click **Apply**.
4. In the Scan to SharePoint area of the left navigation pane, click **Quick Sets**. Click **Add** to launch the Quick Set Wizard.
5. Enter a **Quick Set Name** (for example, "Scan to SharePoint") and a **Quick Set Description**.
6. Select a **Quick Set Start Option** to determine what occurs after selecting a Quick Set on the printer control panel, and then click **Next**.
7. Use the following steps to add the path to the SharePoint folder:



- a. Click **Add** on the **SharePoint Destination Settings** page to open the **Add SharePoint Path** page.
- b. Open another browser window, navigate to the SharePoint folder to use, and then copy the folder path for the SharePoint folder from that browser window.
- c. Paste the SharePoint folder path into the **SharePoint Path:** field.
- d. By default, the printer overwrites an existing file that has the same file name as the new file. Clear **Overwrite existing files** so that a new file with the same name as an existing file is given an updated time/date stamp.
- e. Select an option from the **Authentication Settings** drop-down menu. Select whether it is necessary to sign in to the SharePoint site with credentials, or store the credentials within the Quick Set.



**NOTE:** Use credentials of user to connect after **Sign In at the control panel** is selected in the **Authentication Settings** drop-down menu, the logged-in user must have permission to write to the specified SharePoint site.



**NOTE:** For security purposes, the printer does not display credentials entered in the Quick Set Wizard.

- f. Click **OK** to complete the SharePoint path setup, and navigate back to the SharePoint Destination Settings page.
8. Select **Verify folder access prior to job start** to ensure that the SharePoint folder specified as the destination folder is accessible each time the Quick Set is used. If this option is not selected, jobs can be saved to the SharePoint folder more quickly. However, if this option is not selected *and* the SharePoint folder is inaccessible, the job will fail.
  9. Click **Next**.
  10. Set a **Condition on Which to Notify** on the Notification Settings page. This setting configures the Quick Set to either not notify, or to send email messages or print a summary page if a job either completes successfully or fails. Select one of the following options from the **Condition on Which to Notify** drop-down menu:
    - Select **Do not notify** for the Quick Set to not perform any notification action when a job completes successfully or fails.
    - Select **Notify when job completes** to for the Quick Set to send a notification when a job completes successfully.
    - Select **Notify only if job fails** to for the Quick Set to send a notification only when a job fails.

Selecting either **Notify when job completes** or **Notify only if job fails** requires the **Method Used to Deliver Notification:** to be set. Select from the following options:

- **Email:** Use this option to send an email when the selected notification condition occurs. This option requires a valid email address in the **Notification Email Address:** field.



**NOTE:** To use the email notification feature, first configure the email feature on the printer.

- **Print:** Use this option to print the notification when the selected notification condition occurs.



**NOTE:** Select **Include Thumbnail** for either notification option to include a thumbnail image of the first page of the scanned page of the job.



11. Click **Next**.
12. Select options from the Scan Settings page, and then click **Next**. For more information, see [Table 6-12 Scan settings for Scan to SharePoint on page 97](#).
13. Select options from the **File Settings** page, and then click **Next**. For more information, see [Table 6-13 File settings for Scan to SharePoint on page 98](#).
14. Review the summary of settings. Click **Finish** to save the Quick Set or click **Previous** to edit the settings.

## Scan a file directly to a SharePoint site

Follow the steps to scan a document directly to a SharePoint site.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
  2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Scan** application, select the **Scan** icon, and then select **Scan to SharePoint®**.
- 
-  **NOTE:** It might be necessary to sign in to the printer to use this feature.
- 
3. Under **Quick Sets**, touch **Select**, select a Quick Set, and then select **Load**.
  4. Touch the **File Name:** text field to open a keyboard. Type the name for the file using either the on-screen keyboard or the physical keyboard, and touch the Enter button .
  5. Touch **Options** to view and configure settings for the document.
  6. Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. In the preview screen, use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 6-11** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                  |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                            |

**Table 6-11** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane (continued)

| Button                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                                 |
|   | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|   |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                           |
|   | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                               |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                        |

- When the document is ready, select **Send** to save it to the SharePoint location.

## Quick Set scan settings and options for Scan to SharePoint

Review the settings and options available in the Quick Set Wizard when adding, editing, or copying a Scan to SharePoint Quick Set.

**Table 6-12** Scan settings for Scan to SharePoint

| Feature                      | Description                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Original Size</b>         | Select the page size of the original document.                                                                   |
| <b>Original Sides</b>        | Select whether the original document is single-sided or double-sided.                                            |
| <b>Optimize Text/Picture</b> | Select to optimize for the output of a particular type of content.                                               |
| <b>Content Orientation</b>   | Select the way the content of the original document is placed on the page: <b>Portrait</b> or <b>Landscape</b> . |
| <b>Background Cleanup</b>    | Select a value to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.                 |
| <b>Darkness</b>              | Select a value to adjust the darkness of the file.                                                               |
| <b>Contrast</b>              | Select a value to adjust the contrast of the file.                                                               |
| <b>Sharpness</b>             | Select a value to adjust the sharpness of the file.                                                              |
| <b>Image Preview</b>         | Select whether to require or make optional a displayed preview of the job or to disable a preview.               |

**Table 6-12** Scan settings for Scan to SharePoint (continued)

| Feature                 | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cropping Options</b> | Select whether or not to allow a job to be cropped and the type of cropping option.                                                                |
| <b>Erase Edges</b>      | Select this setting to specify the width of edge margins to be erased, in either inches or millimeters, for the front side and back side of a job. |

**Table 6-13** File settings for Scan to SharePoint

| Feature                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Name Prefix</b>                                    | Set the default file name prefix used for files to be saved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>File Name</b>                                           | Default file name for the file to be saved.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>File Name Suffix</b>                                    | Set the default file name suffix used for files to be saved.<br><br>Duplicate filename suffix default [filename]_YYYYMMDDT                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>File Name Preview</b>                                   | Enter a file name, and then click the <b>Update Preview</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>File Numbering Format</b>                               | Select a file name format for when the job is divided into multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Add numbering when job has just one file (ex. _1-1)</b> | Select this setting to add numbering to a file name when the job is only one file instead of multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>File Type</b>                                           | Select the file format for the saved file.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>High Compression (smaller file)</b>                     | Select this setting to compress the scanned file, which reduces the file size. However, the scanning process for a High compression file might take longer than for a Normal compression file.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>PDF encryption</b>                                      | If the file type is PDF, then this option encrypts the output PDF file. A password must be specified as part of the encryption. The same password must be used to open the file. The user will be prompted to enter a password prior to scanning their job if one has not been set prior to starting the scan. |
| <b>Resolution</b>                                          | Set the resolution for the file. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller.                                                                                        |
| <b>Quality and File Size</b>                               | Select the quality for the file. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images, and they take more time to send.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Color/Black</b>                                         | Specify whether copies are to be printed in color, black and gray, or black only                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Suppress blank pages</b>                                | If the <b>Suppress blank pages</b> option is enabled, blank pages will be ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Create Multiple Files</b>                               | Select this setting to scan pages into separate files based on a predetermined maximum number of pages per file.                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Set up Scan to USB Drive

Enable the Scan to USB feature, which allows you to scan directly to a USB flash drive.

## Introduction

The printer has a feature that enables it to scan a document and save it to a USB flash drive. The feature is not available until it has been configured through the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).

### Step one: Access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

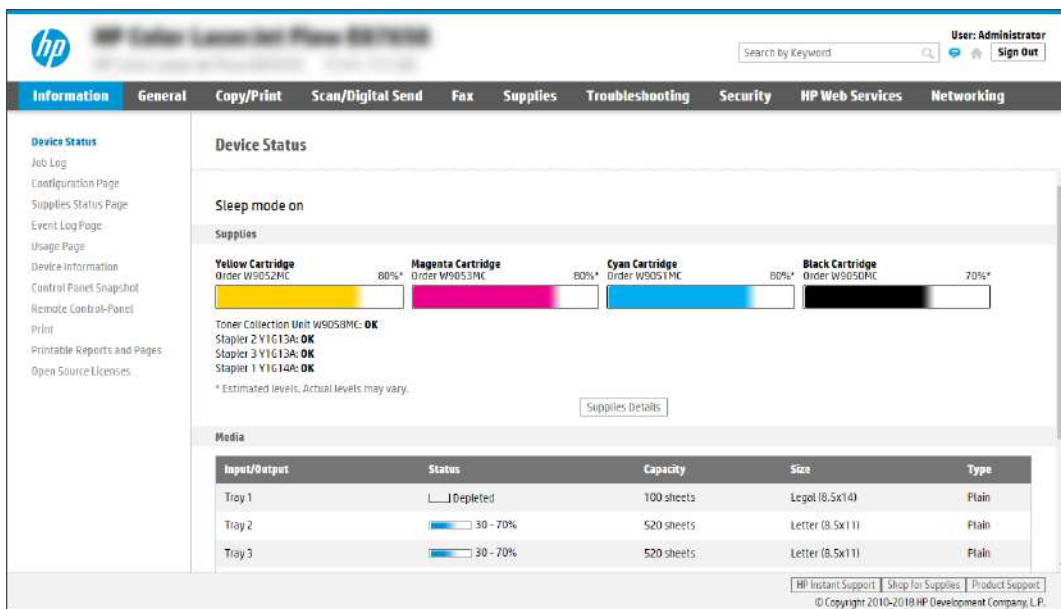
Open the EWS to start the setup process.

 **NOTE:** The figure in this topic shows an EWS screen for a color printer. However, the procedure below is valid for both color and mono printers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 <https://10.10.XX.XXX>

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.



### Step two: Enable Scan to USB Drive

Enable Scan to USB Drive using the following steps.

1. Select the **Security** tab.
2. Scroll to **Hardware Ports** and make sure that **Enable Host USB plug and play** is enabled.
3. Select the **Copy/Print** tab for MFP models or the **Print** tab for SFP models.
4. Select the **Enable Save to USB** check box.

5. Click **Apply** at the bottom of the page.



**NOTE:** Most devices ship with hard disk drives (HDDs) already installed. In some cases, additional storage devices can be added via USB. Verify whether the Save to USB feature needs to be expanded to USB and hard drive.

## Step three: Configure the Quick Sets (optional)

Use the following steps to set up Quick Sets for Scan to USB Drive. Quick Sets are shortcut jobs that can be accessed on the printer Home screen or within the Quick Sets application.

1. In the **Scan to USB Drive** area of the left navigation pane, click **Quick Sets**.
2. Select one of the following options:
  - Select an existing Quick Set under **Quick Sets Application** in the table.
  - OR-
  - Click **Add** to start the Quick Set Wizard.
3. If you clicked **Add**, the Quick Sets Setup page opens. Complete the following information:
  - a. **Quick Set Name:** Enter a title for the new Quick Set.
  - b. **Quick Set Description:** Enter a description of the Quick Set.
  - c. **Quick Set Start Option:** To set how the Quick Set starts, click either **Enter application, then user presses Start** or **Start instantly when selected from the Home Screen**.
4. Select a default location where scanned files are saved on USB storage devices inserted into the USB port on the control panel, and then click **Next**. The default location options are:
  - **Save at root directory of the USB storage device.**
  - **Create or place in this folder on the USB Storage Device** – The path to the folder on the USB storage device must be specified when using this file location option. A backslash \ must be used to separate folder\subfolder names in the path.
5. Select an option from the **Condition on Which to Notify**: drop-down list, and then click **Next**.

This setting determines if, or how, users are notified when a Save To USB Quick Set job completes or fails. The options for the **Condition on Which to Notify**: setting are:

  - **Do not notify**
  - **Notify when job completes**
  - **Notify only if job fails**
6. Choose the **Scan Settings** for the Quick Set, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** For more information on the available scan settings, see [Default scan settings for Scan to USB Drive setup on page 101](#)

7. Choose the **File Settings** for the Quick Set, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE:** For more information on the available file settings, see [Default scan settings for Scan to USB Drive setup on page 101](#)

8. Review the summary of settings, and then click **Finish** to save the Quick Set, or click **Previous** to edit the settings.

## Default scan settings for Scan to USB Drive setup

Review the default settings for Scan to USB Drive setup.

**Table 6-14** Scan settings for Scan to USB Drive setup

| Feature                      | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Original Size</b>         | Select the page size of the original document.                                                                                                     |
| <b>Original Sides</b>        | Select whether the original document is single-sided or double-sided.                                                                              |
| <b>Optimize Text/Picture</b> | Select to optimize for the output of a particular type of content.                                                                                 |
| <b>Content Orientation</b>   | Select the way the content of the original document is placed on the page: <b>Portrait</b> or <b>Landscape</b> .                                   |
| <b>Background Cleanup</b>    | Select a value to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.                                                   |
| <b>Darkness</b>              | Select a value to adjust the darkness of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Contrast</b>              | Select a value to adjust the contrast of the file.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Sharpness</b>             | Select a value to adjust the sharpness of the file.                                                                                                |
| <b>Image Preview</b>         | Select whether to require or make optional a displayed preview of the job or to disable a preview.                                                 |
| <b>Cropping Options</b>      | Select whether or not to allow a job to be cropped and the type of cropping option.                                                                |
| <b>Erase Edges</b>           | Select this setting to specify the width of edge margins to be erased, in either inches or millimeters, for the front side and back side of a job. |

## Default file settings for Save to USB setup

Review the options for Save to USB setup.

**Table 6-15** File settings for Save to USB setup

| Option name                  | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>File Name Prefix</b>      | Set the default file name prefix used for files saved to a network folder.                                                                               |
| <b>File Name</b>             | Default file name for the file to be saved.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel. |
| <b>File Name Suffix</b>      | Set the default file name suffix used for files saved to a network folder.<br><br>Duplicate filename suffix default [filename]_YYYYMMDDT                 |
| <b>File Name Preview</b>     | Enter a file name, and then click the <b>Update Preview</b> button.                                                                                      |
| <b>File Numbering Format</b> | Select a file name format for when the job is divided into multiple files.                                                                               |

**Table 6-15** File settings for Save to USB setup (continued)

| Option name                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Add numbering when job has just one file (ex. _1-1)</b> | Select this setting to add numbering to a file name when the job is only one file instead of multiple files.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>File Type</b>                                           | Select the file format for the saved file.<br><br>Select the <b>User editable</b> check box to make this setting editable at the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>High Compression (smaller file)</b>                     | Select this setting to compress the scanned file, which reduces the file size. However, the scanning process for a High compression file might take longer than for a Normal compression file.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>PDF encryption</b>                                      | If the file type is PDF, then this option encrypts the output PDF file. A password must be specified as part of the encryption. The same password must be used to open the file. The user will be prompted to enter a password prior to scanning their job if one has not been set prior to starting the scan. |
| <b>Resolution</b>                                          | Set the resolution for the file. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller.                                                                                        |
| <b>Quality and File Size</b>                               | Select the quality for the file. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images, and they take more time to send.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Color/Black</b>                                         | Specify whether copies are to be printed in color, black and gray, or black only.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Suppress blank pages</b>                                | If the <b>Suppress blank pages</b> option is enabled, blank pages will be ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Create Multiple Files</b>                               | Select this setting to scan pages into separate files based on a predetermined maximum number of pages per file.                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Scan to email

Scan a document directly to an email address or contact list. The scanned document is sent as an email message attachment.

### Introduction

The printer has a feature that enables it to scan a document and send it to one or more email addresses.

### Scan to email

Use the following steps to scan a document directly to an email address or contact list.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Scan** application, select the **Scan** icon, and then select **Scan to Email**.



**NOTE:** If prompted, type your user name and password.

3. Touch the **To** field to open a keyboard.



**NOTE:** If you are signed in to the printer, your user name or other default information might appear in the **From** field. If so, you might not be able to change it.

4. Specify the recipients by using one of these methods:
  - Use the keypad to enter the address in the [To](#) field.  
 To send to multiple addresses, separate the addresses with a semicolon, or select the Enter button  on the touchscreen keyboard after typing each address.
  - Use a contact list as follows:
    - a. Select the Contacts button  that is next to the [To](#) field to open the Contacts screen.
    - b. Select the appropriate contact list.
    - c. Select a name or names from the list of contacts to add to the recipients list, and then select [Add](#).
5. Complete the [Subject](#), [File Name](#), and [Message](#) fields by touching the field and using the touchscreen keyboard to enter information. Select the Close button  whenever you need to close the keyboard.
6. To load a Quick Set, select [Load](#), select the Quick Set, and then select [Load](#) under the [Quick Sets](#) list.

 **NOTE:** **Quick Sets** are predefined settings for various types of output, such as [Text](#), [Photograph](#), and [High Quality](#). You can select a Quick Set to view the description.

7. To configure settings, such as [File Type and Resolution](#), [Original Sides](#), and [Content Orientation](#), select [Options](#) in the lower left corner, and then select the settings from the [Options](#) menus. Select [Done](#) if prompted.
8. Optional Preview: Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. You can use the [Expand](#) and [Collapse](#) buttons on the left side of the preview pane to expand and collapse the preview screen.

**Table 6-16** Buttons on the left side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Expand the preview screen.   |
|  | Collapse the preview screen. |

Use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.



**Table 6-17 Buttons on the right side of the preview pane**

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view.                                                    |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                                                                     |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|    | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                               |
|    | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                       |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                           |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                    |

- When the document is ready, select **Send** to email it.



**NOTE:** The printer might prompt you to add the email address to the contact list.

# Scan to network folder

Scan a document and save it to a folder on the network.

## Introduction

The printer can scan a file and save it in a shared folder on the network.

## Scan to network folder

Use this procedure to scan a document and save it to a network folder.



**NOTE:** You might be required to sign in to the printer to use this feature.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Scan](#) application, select the [Scan](#) icon, and then select [Scan to Network Folder](#).
3. Specify a folder destination. Folder options must first be configured by the printer administrator.
  - To select a folder location that the administrator already set up, select [Load](#) under [Quick Sets and Defaults](#), select the folder, and then select [Load](#).
  - To specify a new folder location, touch the [Folder Paths](#) field to open a touchscreen keyboard, type the path to the folder, and then select the Enter button . Enter user credentials if prompted and then select [Save](#) to save the path.



**NOTE:** Use this format for the path: `\\server\folder`, where “server” is the name of the server that hosts the shared folder, and “folder” is the name of the shared folder. If the folder is nested inside other folders, complete all necessary segments of the path to reach the folder. For example: `\\server\folder\folder`



**NOTE:** The [Folder Paths](#) field might have a pre-defined path, and it might not be editable. In this situation, the administrator has configured this folder for common access.

4. Touch the [File Name](#) text field to open a touchscreen keyboard, type the name for the file, and then select the Enter button .
5. To configure settings, such as [File Type and Resolution](#), [Original Sides](#), and [Content Orientation](#), select [Options](#) in the lower left corner, and then select the settings from the [Options](#) menus. Select [Done](#) for each setting if prompted.
6. Optional Preview: Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. You can use the [Expand](#) and [Collapse](#) buttons on the left side of the preview pane to expand and collapse the preview screen.

**Table 6-18** Buttons on the left side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|  | Expand the preview screen. |

**Table 6-18** Buttons on the left side of the preview pane (continued)

| Button                                                                            | Description                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Collapse the preview screen. |

Use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 6-19** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view.                                                    |
|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                                                                     |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                               |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                       |

**Table 6-19 Buttons on the right side of the preview pane (continued)**

| Button                                                                            | Description                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.        |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen. |

7. When the document is ready, select **Send** to save the file to the network folder.

## Scan to SharePoint

Scan a document directly to a SharePoint site.

### Introduction

If you have a workflow-equipped printer, you can scan a document and send it to a SharePoint site. This feature eliminates the need to scan the documents to a network folder, USB flash drive, or email message, and then manually upload the files to the SharePoint site.

Scan to SharePoint supports all scanning options, including the ability to scan documents as images or use the OCR features to create text files or searchable PDFs.

 **NOTE:** Before you can scan to SharePoint, your printer administrator or IT department must use the HP Embedded Web Server to enable the feature and set it up.

### Scan to SharePoint

Use the following steps to scan a document directly to a SharePoint site.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Scan** application, select the **Scan** icon, and then select **Scan to SharePoint®**.

 **NOTE:** It might be necessary to sign in to the printer to use this feature.

3. Under **Quick Sets**, touch **Select**, select a Quick Set, and then select **Load**.
4. Select the **File Name:** text field to open a keyboard. Type the name for the file, and then select the enter button .
5. To configure settings, such as **File Type and Resolution**, **Sides**, and **Content Orientation**, select **Options** in the lower left corner, and then select the settings from the **Options** menus. Select **Done** if prompted.

6. Optional Preview: Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. You can use the [Expand](#) and [Collapse](#) buttons on the left side of the preview pane to expand and collapse the preview screen.

**Table 6-20** Buttons on the left side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                            | Description                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Expand the preview screen.   |
|  | Collapse the preview screen. |

Use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 6-21** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                  |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                            |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                              |

**Table 6-21** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane (continued)

| Button                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                           |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                               |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                        |

7. When the document is ready, select **Send** to save it to the SharePoint location.

## Scan to USB drive

Scan a document directly to a USB drive.

### Introduction

The printer can scan a file and save it to a USB flash drive.

### Scan to USB drive

Use the following steps to scan a document directly to a USB drive.



**NOTE:** You might be required to sign in to the printer to use this feature.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. Insert the USB drive into the USB port near the printer control panel.
3. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Scan** application, select the **Scan** icon, and then select **Scan to USB Drive**.
4. Select the USB drive under **Destination**, and then select the save location (either the root of the USB drive or an existing folder).
5. Touch the **File Name** text field to open a touchscreen keyboard, type the name for the file, and then select the Enter button .

6. To configure settings, such as [File Type and Resolution](#), [Original Sides](#), and [Content Orientation](#), select [Options](#) in the lower left corner, and then select the settings from the [Options](#) menus. Select [Done](#) if prompted.
7. Optional Preview: Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. You can use the [Expand](#) and [Collapse](#) buttons on the left side of the preview pane to expand and collapse the preview screen.

**Table 6-22 Buttons on the left side of the preview pane**

| Button                                                                            | Description                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Expand the preview screen.   |
|  | Collapse the preview screen. |

Use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 6-23 Buttons on the right side of the preview pane**

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view. |
|  | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.                                                                                       |
|  | <b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                                                                               |
|  | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.                                                                                                 |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                     | <b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                                                                               |

**Table 6-23 Buttons on the right side of the preview pane (continued)**

| Button                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                           |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                               |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                        |

8. When the document is ready, select **Save** to save the file to the USB drive.

## Use HP JetAdvantage business solutions

HP JetAdvantage solutions are workflow and printing solutions that are easy to use, and both network- and cloud-based. HP JetAdvantage solutions are designed to help businesses of all types, including healthcare, financial services, manufacturing, and public sector, manage a fleet of printers and scanners.

HP JetAdvantage Solutions include:

- HP JetAdvantage Security solutions
- HP JetAdvantage Management solutions
- HP JetAdvantage Workflow solutions
- HP JetAdvantage Mobile Printing solutions

For more information about HP JetAdvantage business workflow and printing solutions, go to [www.hp.com/go/PrintSolutions](http://www.hp.com/go/PrintSolutions).

## Additional scan tasks

Locate information on the Web for performing common scan tasks.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

Instructions are available for performing specific scan tasks, such as the following:



- Copy or scan pages from books or other bound documents
- Send a scanned document to a folder in the printer memory
- Copy or scan both sides of an identification card
- Copy or scan a document into a booklet format

---

# 7 Fax

Configure the fax features, and send and receive faxes using the printer.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

## Set up fax

Set up the fax features for the printer.

### Introduction

This information applies to fax and Flow models, or to other printers when an optional analog fax accessory has been installed. Before continuing, connect the printer to a phone line (for analog fax) or to an Internet or network fax service.

### Set up fax by using the printer control panel

Configure the fax features using the control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **Fax**
  - b. **Internal Fax Modem Setup**



**NOTE:** If the **Internal Fax Modem Setup** menu does not appear in the menu listing, LAN or Internet fax might be enabled. When LAN or Internet fax is enabled, the analog fax accessory is disabled and the **Internal Fax Modem Setup** menu does not display. Only one fax feature, either LAN fax, analog fax, or Internet fax, can be enabled at a time. To use analog fax when LAN fax is enabled, use the HP Embedded Web Server to disable LAN fax.

3. Select the location from the list on the right side of the screen, and then select **Next**.

4. Touch the [Company Name](#) text field, and use the keypad to type the company name.
5. Touch the [Fax Number](#) text field, and use the keypad to type the sending fax number. Select [Next](#).
6. Verify that the date and time settings are correct. Make changes as necessary, and then select [Next](#).
7. If a dialing prefix is required for sending faxes, touch the [Dialing Prefix](#) text field, and use the keypad to enter the number.
8. Review all the information on the left pane, and then select [Finish](#) to complete the fax setup.

## Change fax configurations

Change or update fax settings.



**NOTE:** The settings configured using the control panel override any settings made in the HP Embedded Web Server.

### Fax dialing settings

Use the following steps to change the fax dialing settings.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Send Settings](#)
  - c. [Fax Dialing Settings](#)
3. Configure any of the following settings, and then select [Done](#).

**Table 7-1** Fax dialing settings

| Menu Item                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Redial on Error</a>     | The <a href="#">Redial on Error</a> feature sets the number of times a fax number will be redialed when an error occurs during a fax transmission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <a href="#">Redial on No Answer</a> | The <a href="#">Redial on No Answer</a> setting selects the number of times the fax accessory redials if the number dialed does not answer. The number of retries is either 0 to 1 (used in the U.S.) or 0 to 2, depending on the location setting. The interval between retries is set by the <a href="#">Redial Interval</a> setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <a href="#">Redial on Busy</a>      | The <a href="#">Redial on Busy</a> setting selects the number of times (0 through 9) the fax accessory redials a number when the number is busy. The interval between retries is set by the <a href="#">Redial Interval</a> setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <a href="#">Redial Interval</a>     | <p>The <a href="#">Redial Interval</a> setting selects the number of minutes between retries if the number dialed is busy or not answering, or if an error occurs.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You might observe a redial message on the control panel when both the <a href="#">Redial on Busy</a> and <a href="#">Redial on No Answer</a> settings are set to off. This occurs when the fax accessory dials a number, establishes a connection, and then loses the connection. As a result of this error condition, the fax accessory performs three automatic redial attempts regardless of the redial settings. During this redial operation, a message displays on the control panel to indicate that a redial is in progress.</p> |

**Table 7-1 Fax dialing settings (continued)**

| Menu Item           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fax Send Speed      | The <a href="#">Fax Send Speed</a> setting sets the modem bit rate (measured in bits per second) of the Analog Fax modem while sending a fax. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Fast (v.34 - 33.6k)</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Medium (v.17 - 14.4k)</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Slow (v.29 - 9.6k)</a></li></ul> |
| Line Monitor Volume | Use the <a href="#">Line Monitor Volume</a> setting to control the printer's dialing volume level when sending faxes.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Dialing Mode        | The <a href="#">Dialing Mode</a> setting sets the type of dialing that is used: either tone (touch-tone phones) or pulse (rotary-dial phones).                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Dialing Prefix      | The <a href="#">Dialing Prefix</a> setting allows you to enter a prefix number (such as a "9" to access an outside line) when dialing. This prefix number is automatically added to all phone numbers when dialed.                                                                                                               |
| Detect Dial Tone    | The <a href="#">Detect Dial Tone</a> setting determines whether the fax checks for a dial tone before sending a fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

## General fax send settings

Use the following steps to change the fax send settings.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Send Settings](#)
  - c. [General Fax Send Settings](#)
3. Configure any of the following settings, and then select [Done](#).

**Table 7-2 Fax send settings**

| Menu Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fax Number Confirmation | When the <a href="#">Fax Number Confirmation</a> feature is enabled, the fax number must be entered twice to ensure that it was entered correctly. The feature is disabled by default. |
| PC Fax Send             | Use the <a href="#">PC Fax Send</a> feature to send faxes from a PC. This feature is enabled by default.                                                                               |

**Table 7-2 Fax send settings (continued)**

| Menu Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Correction Mode | <p>Normally, the fax accessory monitors the signals on the telephone line while it is sending or receiving a fax. If the fax accessory detects an error during the transmission and the <a href="#">Error Correction Mode</a> setting is on, the fax accessory can request that the error portion of the fax be sent again.</p> <p>The <a href="#">Error Correction Mode</a> feature is enabled by default. You should turn it off only if you are having trouble sending or receiving a fax and if you are willing to accept the errors in the transmission and a probable quality reduction in the image. Turning off the setting might be useful when you are trying to send a fax overseas or receive one from overseas, or if you are using a satellite telephone connection.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Some VoIP providers might suggest turning off the <a href="#">Error Correction Mode</a> setting. However, this is not usually necessary.</p> |
| Fax Header            | Use the <a href="#">Fax Header</a> feature to control whether the header is appended to the top, and content is shifted down, or if the header is overlaid on top of the previous header.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Fax receive settings

Use the following steps to change the fax receive settings.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Receive Settings](#)
  - c. [Fax Receive Setup](#)
3. Configure any of the following settings, and then select [Done](#).

**Table 7-3 Fax receive settings**

| Menu Item       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Receive Mode    | <p>The <a href="#">Receive Mode</a> setting determines how the fax accessory receives fax jobs. Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Automatic</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">TAM</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Fax/Tel</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Manual</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Rings to Answer | <p>The <a href="#">Rings to Answer</a> setting determines the number of times the phone rings before the call is answered by the fax accessory.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The default range for the available options for the <a href="#">Rings to Answer</a> setting is location-specific. The range of possible <a href="#">Rings to Answer</a> options is limited by location.</p> <p>If the fax accessory is not answering, and the <a href="#">Rings to Answer</a> setting is <b>1</b>, try increasing it to <b>2</b>.</p> |
| Ring Volume     | The <a href="#">Ring Volume</a> setting allows you to adjust the ringer volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**Table 7-3 Fax receive settings (continued)**

| Menu Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Fax Receive Speed</a> | Touch the <a href="#">Fax Receive Speed</a> drop-down menu and select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Fast (v.34 – 33.6k)</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Medium (v.17 – 14.4k)</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Slow (v.29 – 9.6k)</a></li> </ul> |
| <a href="#">Extension Phone</a>   | This setting allows you use a separate telephone in conjunction with the fax functions.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <a href="#">Allow Reprinting</a>  | This setting allows you to reprint received faxes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <a href="#">Receive to PC</a>     | This setting allows you to receive faxes directly to your computer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <a href="#">Fax Polling</a>       | This setting allows you to enable or disable the fax polling function.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <a href="#">Fax/Tel Ring Time</a> | This setting determines the number of times the phone rings before the fax/tel mode initiates.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

## Send a fax

Use the following steps to send a fax from the printer.

1. Place the document face-down on the scanner glass, or place it face-up in the document feeder and adjust the paper guides to fit the size of the document.
2. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Fax](#) application, and then select the [Fax](#) icon. You might be prompted to type a user name and password.
3. Specify the recipients using one of these methods:
  - Use the keypad to enter the recipient or recipients.  
Touch the [Fax Recipients](#) text field, and then use the keypad to enter the fax number. To send to multiple fax numbers, separate the numbers with a semicolon, or select the Enter button  on the touchscreen keyboard after typing each number.
  - Use a contact list as follows:
    - a. Select the Contacts button  that is next to the [Fax Recipients](#) field to open the Contacts screen.
    - b. Select the appropriate contact list.
    - c. Select a name or names from the list of contacts to add to the recipients list, and then select [Add](#).
4. To load a Quick Set, select [Load](#), select the Quick Set, and then select [Load](#) under the [Quick Sets](#) list.



**NOTE:** [Quick Sets](#) are predefined settings for various types of output, such as [Text](#), [Photograph](#), and [High Quality](#). You can select a Quick Set to view the description.

5. To configure settings, such as [Resolution](#), [Sides](#), and [Content Orientation](#), select [Options](#) in the lower left corner, and then select the settings from the [Options](#) menus. Select [Done](#) if prompted.

6. Optional Preview: Touch the right pane of the screen to preview the document. You can use the [Expand](#) and [Collapse](#) buttons on the left side of the preview pane to expand and collapse the preview screen.

**Table 7-4** Buttons on the left side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                            | Description                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Expand the preview screen.   |
|  | Collapse the preview screen. |

Use the buttons on the right of the screen to adjust the preview options and to rearrange, rotate, insert, or remove pages.

**Table 7-5** Buttons on the right side of the preview pane

| Button                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Use these buttons to toggle between single-page view and thumbnail view. More options are available in thumbnail view than in single-page view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use these buttons to zoom in or out on the selected page.<br><b>NOTE:</b> Select only one page at a time to use these buttons.                  |
|  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Use this button to rotate the page 180 degrees.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                            |
|  | Use this button to delete the selected pages.<br><b>NOTE:</b> This button is available only in the thumbnail view.                              |

**Table 7-5 Buttons on the right side of the preview pane (continued)**

| Button                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use these buttons to rearrange the pages within the document. Select one or more pages and move them to the left or right.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are available only in the thumbnail view. |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | Use this button to add a page to the document. The printer prompts to scan additional pages.                                                                                                           |
|  | Use this button to clear the changes made in the preview and start over.                                                                                                                               |
|  | Touch this button to collapse the preview screen and return to the Copy screen.                                                                                                                        |

7. When the document is ready, select [Send](#) to send the fax.

## Create a fax printing schedule

Faxes print automatically upon receipt, but they can also be stored and printed on a schedule that you determine. After you create the schedule, you can enable or disable the schedule as needed.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Receive Settings](#)
  - c. [Fax Printing Schedule](#)
3. Under [Incoming Fax Options](#), select [Use Schedule](#).
4. Select [New Event](#).
5. Select an option under [Event Type](#).
  - [Begin Printing](#)
  - [Begin Storing](#)
6. Choose a time and the day. You can select multiple days.
7. Select [Save](#). To add another event, repeat steps 4 – 6.
8. Select [Done](#) to enable the fax printing schedule.



# Block incoming faxes

Use the fax block list setting to create a list of blocked phone numbers. When a fax is received from a blocked phone number, the fax is not printed and is immediately deleted from memory.

## Create a list of blocked fax numbers

Use the following steps to create the list of fax numbers to block.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Receive Settings](#)
  - c. [Blocked Fax Numbers](#)
3. Use one of the following options to add a number to the list:
  - Select [Add Last Sender](#).
  - Select the [New Fax Number](#) field, type the number on the keypad that appears, and then select the Enter button . To add additional numbers, type the number and select the Enter button .
4. Select [Done](#).

## Delete numbers from the list of blocked fax numbers

Use the following steps to remove numbers from the list of blocked fax numbers.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Receive Settings](#)
  - c. [Blocked Fax Numbers](#)
3. Select one or more existing fax numbers in the list, or select [Select All](#) if you want to remove all the numbers.
4. Select the Trash button , and then select [Delete](#) on the confirmation prompt.

## Additional fax tasks

Locate information on the Web for performing common fax tasks.

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

Instructions are available for fax tasks, such as the following:

- Create and manage fax speed dial lists
- Configure fax billing codes
- Use a fax printing schedule
- Block incoming faxes
- Fax archiving and forwarding

---

## 8 Manage the printer

Utilize management tools, configure security and energy-conservation settings, and manage firmware updates for the printer.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

### Advanced configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to manage advanced printing functions.

#### Introduction

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to manage printing functions from a computer instead of the printer control panel.

- View printer status information
- Determine the remaining life for all supplies and order new ones
- View and change tray configurations
- View and change the printer control-panel menu configuration
- View and print internal pages
- Receive notification of printer and supplies events
- View and change network configuration

The HP Embedded Web Server works when the printer is connected to an IP-based network. The HP Embedded Web Server does not support IPX-based printer connections. Internet access is not needed to open and use the HP Embedded Web Server.

When the printer is connected to the network, the HP Embedded Web Server is automatically available.



**NOTE:** The HP Embedded Web Server is not accessible beyond the network firewall.

## How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Use the following steps to open the Embedded Web Server.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS web page opens.



**NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

To use the HP Embedded Web Server, the browser must meet the following requirements:

### Windows® 7

- Internet Explorer (version 8.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

### Windows® 8 or greater

- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

### Windows 10 or greater

- Microsoft Edge (version 93 or greater)
- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

### macOS

- Safari (version 5.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)

### Linux

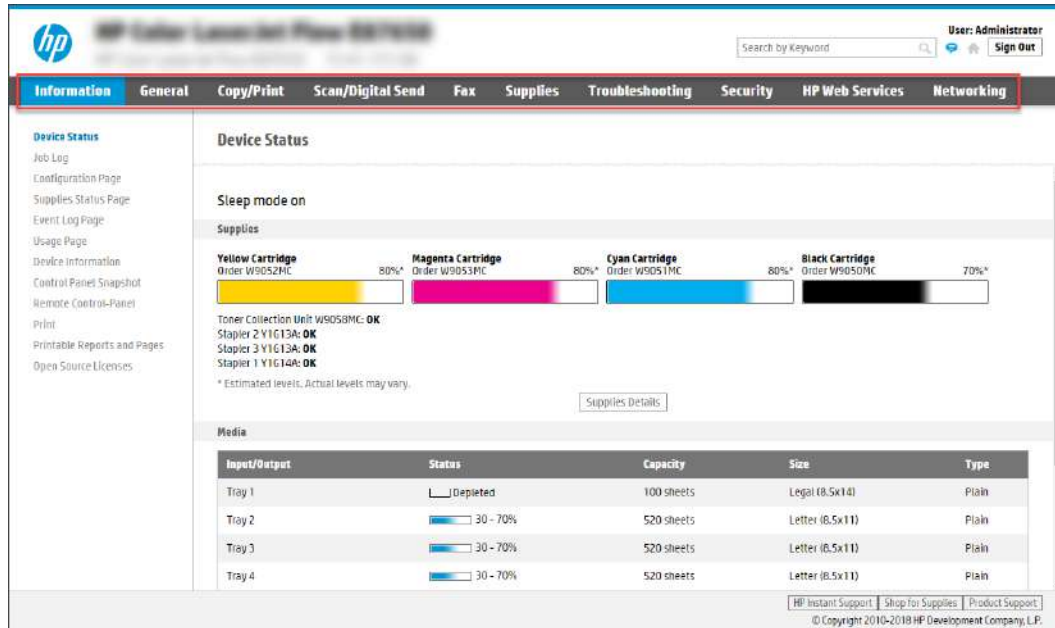
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)

- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

## HP Embedded Web Server features

Learn about the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) features available on each tab.

**Figure 8-1 EWS Tabs**



**NOTE:** Copy/Print, Scan/Digital Send, and Fax tabs only appear for multi-function printers (MFPs). A Print tab appears for single-function printers (SFPs).

## Information tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Information** tab.

**Table 8-1 HP Embedded Web Server Information tab**

| Menu                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Status</b>          | Shows the printer status and shows the estimated life remaining of HP supplies. The page also shows the type and size of paper set for each tray. To change the default settings, click the <b>Change Settings</b> link.                                                                           |
| <b>Job Log</b>                | Provides a list of the jobs that have been processed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Configuration Page</b>     | Shows the information found on the configuration page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Supplies Status Page</b>   | Shows the status of the supplies for the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Event Log Page</b>         | Shows a list of all printer events and errors. Use the <b>HP Instant Support</b> link (in the <b>Other Links</b> area on all HP Embedded Web Server pages) to connect to a set of dynamic web pages that help solve problems. These pages also show additional services available for the printer. |
| <b>Usage Page</b>             | Shows a summary of the number of pages the printer has printed, grouped by size, type, and paper print path.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Device Information</b>     | Shows the printer network name, address, and model information. To customize these entries, click the <b>Device Information</b> menu on the <b>General</b> tab.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Control Panel Snapshot</b> | Shows an image of the current screen on the control panel display.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

**Table 8-1 HP Embedded Web Server Information tab (continued)**

| Menu                        | Description                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Remote Control-Panel        | Provides a way to troubleshoot or manage the printer from a browser window on a desktop or laptop.   |
| Print                       | Allows the user to send a print-ready file to the printer to be printed.                             |
| Printable Reports and Pages | Lists the internal reports and pages for the printer. Select one or more items to print.             |
| Open Source Licenses        | Shows a summary of the licenses for open source software programs that can be used with the printer. |

## General tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **General** tab.

**Table 8-2 HP Embedded Web Server General tab**

| Menu                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Control Panel Customization | Reorder, show, or hide features on the control-panel display.<br><br>Change the default display language and keyboard layouts.                                                                                             |
| Quick Sets                  | Configure jobs that are available in the <b>Quick Sets</b> area of the Home screen on the printer control panel.                                                                                                           |
| Alerts                      | Set up email alerts for various printer and supplies events.                                                                                                                                                               |
| Control Panel Settings App  | Shows the Settings app options that are available on the printer control panel.                                                                                                                                            |
| General Settings            | Configure how the printer recovers from jams and other general printer settings.                                                                                                                                           |
| AutoSend                    | Configure the printer to send automated emails regarding printer configuration and supplies to specific email addresses.                                                                                                   |
| Edit Other Links            | Add or customize a link to another website. This link displays in the footer area on all HP Embedded Web Server pages.                                                                                                     |
| Ordering Information        | Enter information about ordering replacement toner cartridges. This information displays on the supplies status page.                                                                                                      |
| Device Information          | Name the printer and assign an asset number to it. Enter the name of the primary contact who will receive information about the printer.                                                                                   |
| Language                    | Set the language in which to display the HP Embedded Web Server information.                                                                                                                                               |
| Firmware Upgrade            | Download and install printer firmware upgrade files.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Date/Time Settings          | Set the date and time or synchronize with a network time server.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Energy Settings             | Set or edit a wake time, sleep time, and sleep delay for the printer. Set a different schedule for each day of the week and for holidays.<br><br>Set which interactions with the printer cause it to wake from sleep mode. |
| Back up and Restore         | Create a backup file that contains printer and user data. If necessary, use this file to restore data to the printer.                                                                                                      |
| Reset Factory Settings      | Restore printer settings to the factory defaults.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Solution Installer          | Install or remove third-party software packages that extend or modify the functionality of the printer.                                                                                                                    |
| Job Statistics Settings     | Provides connection information about third-party job-statistics services, or enables local serverless device job accounting.                                                                                              |

**Table 8-2** HP Embedded Web Server General tab (continued)

| Menu           | Description                                                                                                  |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quota Settings | Provides connection information about third-party job-quota services, or enables local device quota service. |

## Other Links list

Configure which links display in the footer of the HP Embedded Web Server by using the **Edit Other Links** menu on the **General** tab.



**NOTE:** The following are the default links.

**Table 8-3** HP Embedded Web Server Other Links list

| Menu               | Description                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HP Instant Support | Connect to the HP website to find solutions to printer problems.                                            |
| Shop for Supplies  | Connect to the HP website for information on purchasing original HP supplies, such as cartridges and paper. |
| Product Support    | Connect to the support site for the printer to search for help on various topics.                           |

## Copy/Print tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Copy/Print** tab.

**Table 8-4** HP Embedded Web Server Copy/Print tab

| Menu                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print from USB Drive Settings           | Enable or disable the <a href="#">Print from USB Drive</a> menu on the control panel.                                                                                                                                         |
| Manage Stored Jobs                      | Enable or disable the ability to store jobs in the printer memory.<br>Configure job-storage options.                                                                                                                          |
| Default Print Options                   | Configure the default options for print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Restrict Color<br>(Color printers only) | Permit or restrict color printing and copying.<br>Specify permissions for individual users or for jobs that are sent from specific software programs.                                                                         |
| PCL and PostScript Settings             | Adjust the PCL and PostScript settings for all print jobs, including copy jobs and received faxes.                                                                                                                            |
| Print Quality                           | Configure the print quality settings, including color adjustment, image registration, and allowed paper types.                                                                                                                |
| Copy Settings                           | Configure the default options and Quick Sets for copy jobs.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> If job-specific copy setting options are not set from the control panel at the start of a job, the default settings will be used for the job. |
| Expert Copy                             | Enable or disable Expert Copy and set the initial copy view.<br><br>The Expert Copy feature is available only on some HP MFPs with larger control panels, and is available in FutureSmart 4 firmware 24.7.3 release or later. |
| Manage Trays                            | Configure settings for paper trays.                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**Table 8-4 HP Embedded Web Server Copy/Print tab (continued)**

| Menu                          | Description                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Manage Stapler/Stacker</b> | Configure settings for the stapler/stacker for printers that have this feature. |

## Scan/Digital Send tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Scan/Digital Send** tab.

**Table 8-5 HP Embedded Web Server Scan/Digital Send tab**

| Menu                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Email Setup</b>            | Configure the default email settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Settings for the outgoing mail (SMTP) server</li><li>• Settings for Email Quick Sets jobs</li><li>• Default message settings, such as the "From" address and the subject line</li><li>• Settings for digital signatures and encryption</li><li>• Settings for email notifications</li><li>• Default scan settings for email jobs</li><li>• Default file settings for email jobs</li></ul>   |
| <b>Scan to Network Folder</b> | Configure the network folder settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved in a network folder</li><li>• Settings for notifications</li><li>• Default scan settings for jobs saved in a network folder</li><li>• Default file settings for jobs saved in a network folder</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Scan to SharePoint*</b>    | Configure the SharePoint settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved in a document library on the SharePoint site</li><li>• Default settings for jobs saved in a document library on the SharePoint site</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Scan to USB Drive</b>      | Configure the USB settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved on a USB flash drive</li><li>• Settings for notifications</li><li>• Default scan settings for jobs saved on a USB flash drive</li><li>• Default file settings for jobs saved on a USB flash drive</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Contacts</b>               | Manage contacts, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Add email addresses into the printer one at a time.</li><li>• Import a large list of frequently-used email addresses on to the printer all at once, rather than adding them one at a time.</li><li>• Export contacts from the printer into a .CSV file on the computer to use as a data backup, or import the records onto another HP printer.</li><li>• Edit email addresses that have already been saved in the printer.</li></ul> |



**Table 8-5 HP Embedded Web Server Scan/Digital Send tab (continued)**

| Menu                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Preferences</b>                                          | Manage general scanning settings.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards</b> | Configure the printer to send scanned images as email attachments.<br><br>Configure the printer to save scanned images to network-folder Quick Sets. Quick Sets provide easy access to files saved on the network. |
| <b>Digital Sending Software Setup</b>                       | Configure settings related to using optional Digital Sending software.                                                                                                                                             |

## Fax tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Fax** tab.

**Table 8-6 HP Embedded Web Server Fax tab**

| Menu                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Send Setup</b>             | Configure settings for sending faxes, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Default settings for outgoing faxes</li><li>• Settings for fax Quick Sets jobs</li><li>• Settings for notifications</li><li>• Default setting for sending faxes using the internal fax modem</li><li>• Settings for using a LAN fax service</li><li>• Settings for using an Internet fax service</li></ul> |
| <b>Fax Speed Dials</b>            | Manage speed dials, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Import .CSV files containing email addresses, fax numbers, or user records, so that they can be accessed on this printer.</li><li>• Export email, fax, or user records from the printer into a file on the computer to use as a data backup, or import the records onto another HP printer.</li></ul>                        |
| <b>Fax Receive Setup</b>          | Configure default print options for incoming faxes, and set up a fax printing schedule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Fax Archive and Forwarding</b> | Enable or disable fax archiving and fax forwarding, and configure basic settings for each: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fax archiving is a method to send a copy of all incoming and outgoing faxes to an email address, a network folder, or an FTP server.</li><li>• Fax forwarding is a method to forward incoming faxes to a different fax device.</li></ul>                                       |
| <b>Fax Activity Log</b>           | Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Supplies tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Supplies** tab.

**Table 8-7 HP Embedded Web Server Supplies tab**

| Menu                   | Description                                                            |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Manage Supplies</b> | Configure how the printer reacts when supplies reach a Very Low state. |

## Troubleshooting tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Troubleshooting** tab.

**Table 8-8 HP Embedded Web Server Troubleshooting tab**

| Menu                                                                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>General Troubleshooting</b>                                                                                                           | <p>Use the following options as appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Reports and Tests</b> area: Select and print several types of reports and tests. Some reports can be viewed in the Embedded Web Server by clicking the <b>View</b> button.</li> <li>• <b>Fax Tools</b> area: Configure settings for fax troubleshooting. (MFP and Digital Sender products with HP analog fax accessory only)</li> <li>• <b>OXPD Troubleshooting</b> area: Enable or disable the <b>Allow a Non-Secure Connection for Web Services</b> option</li> <li>• <b>Auto Recovery</b> area: Enable or disable the <b>Enable Auto Recovery</b> option, which allows the printer to auto recover from errors that might require the power to be turned off and on (for example, a 49 error).</li> </ul> |
| <b>Online Help</b>                                                                                                                       | Link to HP cloud-based online help to assist in troubleshooting printing issues.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Diagnostic Data</b><br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This item is available only if an administrator password is set from the <b>Security</b> tab. | Export printer information to a file that can be useful for HP technical support to use for detailed problem analysis.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Calibration/Cleaning</b><br><br>(Color LaserJet printers only)                                                                        | Enable the automatic cleaning feature, create and print the cleaning page, and select an option to calibrate the printer immediately.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Reset Factory Settings</b>                                                                                                            | Restore printer settings to factory defaults.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Firmware Upgrade</b>                                                                                                                  | Download and install printer firmware upgrade files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## Security tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Security** tab.

**Table 8-9 HP Embedded Web Server Security tab**

| Menu                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>General Security</b>         | <p>Settings for general security, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure an administrator password to restrict access to certain features on the printer.</li> <li>• Set a custom device Service Access Code.</li> <li>• Set PjL password for processing PjL commands.</li> <li>• Set file system access and firmware upgrade security.</li> <li>• Enable or disable the Host USB port on the control panel or the USB connectivity port on the formatter for printing directly from a computer.</li> <li>• View the status of all security settings.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Account Policy</b>           | Enable administrator account settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Access Control</b>           | Configure access to printer functions for specific individuals or groups, and select the method individuals use to sign in to the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Protect Stored Data</b>      | <p>Configure and manage the internal storage for the printer.</p> <p>Configure settings for jobs that are stored on the printer internal storage.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Manage Remote Apps</b>       | Manage or whitelist remote apps by importing or deleting certificates that allow devices to use this product.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Certificate Management</b>   | Install and manage security certificates for access to the printer and the network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Email Domain Restriction</b> | If email functionality is enabled, administrators can limit the email addresses to which the printer can send messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Web Service Security</b>     | Allow resources on this printer to be accessed by web pages from different domains. If no sites are added to the list, then all sites are trusted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Self Test</b>                | Verify that the security functions are running according to expected system parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## HP Web Services tab

Use the **HP Web Services** tab to configure and enable HP Web Services for this printer. It is necessary to Enable HP Web Services to use the HP ePrint feature.

**Table 8-10 HP Embedded Web Server HP Web Services tab**

| Menu                      | Description                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Web Services Setup</b> | Connect this printer to HP Connected on the web by enabling HP Web Services.                                     |
| <b>Web Proxy</b>          | Configure a proxy server if there are issues enabling HP Web Services or connecting the printer to the Internet. |
| <b>HP JetAdvantage</b>    | Access solutions that extend the capabilities of the printer                                                     |
| <b>Smart Cloud Print</b>  | Enable Smart Cloud Print, which allows access to web-based apps that extend the capabilities of the printer.     |

## Networking tab

Use the **Networking** tab to configure and secure network settings for the printer when it is connected to an IP-based network. This tab does not display if the printer is connected to other types of networks.

**Table 8-11** HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Configuration settings

| Menu             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wireless Station | Configure the initial wireless settings.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The configuration options available depend on the print server model.                                                                                                            |
| Wi-Fi Direct     | Configure Wi-Fi Direct settings for printers that include embedded Wi-Fi Direct Print and NFC printing or that have a wireless accessory installed.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The configuration options available depend on the print server model. |
| TCP/IP Settings  | Configure TCP/IP settings for IPv4 and IPv6 networks.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The configuration options available depend on the print server model.                                                                                               |
| Network Settings | Configure IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, DLC/LLC, and SNMP settings, depending on the print server model.                                                                                                                                                |
| Other Settings   | Configure general printing protocols and services supported by the print server. The available options depend on the print server model, but can include firmware update, LPD queues, USB settings, support information, and refresh rate.    |
| AirPrint         | Enable, set up, or disable network printing from Apple-supported printers.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Select Language  | Change the language displayed by the HP Embedded Web Server. This page displays if the web pages support multiple languages. Optionally, select supported languages through language-preference settings in the browser.                      |
| Select Location  | Select a country/region for the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Table 8-12** HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Google Cloud Print settings

| Menu      | Description                        |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| Setup     | Set up Google Cloud Print options. |
| Web Proxy | Configure proxy settings.          |

**Table 8-13** HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Security settings

| Menu                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings             | View and restore current security settings to factory-default values.<br><br>Configure security settings using the Security Configuration Wizard.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Do not use the Security Configuration Wizard to configure security settings if using network-management applications, such as HP Web Jetadmin. |
| Authorization        | Control configuration management and use of this printer, including limiting host access to this printer through an Access Control List (ACL) (for selected print servers on IPv4 networks only).                                                                                                                    |
| Secure Communication | Configure Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol and encryption options.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Table 8-13 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Security settings (continued)**

| Menu                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mgmt. Protocols       | Configure and manage security protocols for this printer, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Set the security management level for the HP Embedded Web Server, and control traffic over HTTP and HTTPS.</li><li>• Configure the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) operation. Enable or disable the SNMP v1/v2c or SNMP v3 agents on the print server.</li><li>• Control access through protocols that may not be secure, such as printing protocols, print services, discovery protocols, name resolution services, and configuration-management protocols.</li></ul> |
| 802.1X Authentication | Configure 802.1X authentication settings on the Jetdirect print server as required for client authentication on the network, and reset the 802.1X authentication settings to factory-default values.<br><br><b>CAUTION:</b> When changing the 802.1X authentication settings; the printer might lose its connection. To reconnect, it might be necessary to reset the print server to a factory-default state and reinstall the printer.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| IPsec/Firewall        | View or configure a Firewall policy or an IPsec/Firewall policy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Announcement Agent    | Enable or disable the HP Device Announcement Agent, set the configuration server, and configure mutual authentication using certificates.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Table 8-14 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Diagnostics settings**

| Menu               | Description                                                                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Network Statistics | Display network statistics that are collected and stored on the HP Jetdirect print server.        |
| Protocol Info      | View a list of network-configuration settings on the HP Jetdirect print server for each protocol. |
| Configuration Page | View the HP Jetdirect configuration page, which contains status and configuration information.    |

## Configure IP network settings

Use the EWS to configure the printer network settings.

### Printer sharing disclaimer

Review the following disclaimer.

HP does not support peer-to-peer networking, as the feature is a function of Microsoft operating systems and not of the HP printer drivers. Go to Microsoft at [www.microsoft.com](http://www.microsoft.com).

### View or change network settings

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to view or change IP configuration settings.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):

- a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
- b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Click the **Networking** tab to obtain network information. Change settings as needed.

## Rename the printer on a network

To rename the printer on a network so that it can be uniquely identified, use the HP Embedded Web Server.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.

 https://10.10.XX.XXX

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Open the **General** tab.
3. On the Device Information page, the default printer name is in the **Device Name** field. You can change this name to uniquely identify this printer.

 **NOTE:** Completing the other fields on this page is optional.

4. Click the **Apply** button to save the changes.

## Manually configure IPv4 TCP/IP parameters from the control panel

Use the control-panel [Settings](#) menus to manually set an IPv4 address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Networking](#)

- b. Ethernet
        - c. TCP/IP
        - d. IPV 4 Settings
        - e. Config Method
3. Select the **Manual** option, and then touch the **Save** button.
4. Open the **Manual Settings** menu.
5. Touch the **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, or **Default Gateway** option.
6. Touch the first field to open a keypad. Enter the correct digits for the field, and then touch the **OK** button.  
  
Repeat the process for each field, and then touch the **Save** button.

## Manually configure IPv6 TCP/IP parameters from the control panel

Use the control-panel **Settings** menus to manually set an IPv6 address.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.
2. To enable manual configuration, open the following menus:
  - a. **Networking**
  - b. **Ethernet**
  - c. **TCP/IP**
  - d. **IPV6 Settings**
3. Select **Enable**, and then select **On**.
4. Select the **Enable Manual Settings** option, and then touch the **Done** button.
5. To configure the address, open the **Address** menu, and then touch the field to open a keypad.
6. Use the keypad to enter the address, and then touch the **OK** button.
7. Touch **Save**.

## Link speed and duplex settings

Use the following steps to make changes to link speed and duplex settings.



---

**NOTE:** This information applies only to Ethernet networks. It does not apply to wireless networks.

---

The link speed and communication mode of the print server must match the network hub. For most situations, leave the printer in automatic mode. Incorrect changes to the link speed and duplex settings might prevent the printer from communicating with other network devices. To make changes, use the printer control panel.



---

**NOTE:** The printer setting must match the setting for the network device (a network hub, switch, gateway, router, or computer).

---



**NOTE:** Making changes to these settings causes the printer to turn off and then on. Make changes only when the printer is idle.

---

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **Networking**
  - b. **Ethernet**
  - c. **Link Speed**
3. Select one of the following options:
  - **Auto:** The print server automatically configures itself for the highest link speed and communication mode allowed on the network.
  - **10T Half:** 10 megabytes per second (Mbps), half-duplex operation
  - **10T Full:** 10 Mbps, full-duplex operation
  - **10T Auto:** 10 Mbps, automatic-duplex operation
  - **100TX Half:** 100 Mbps, half-duplex operation
  - **100TX Full:** 100 Mbps, full-duplex operation
  - **100TX Auto:** 100 Mbps, automatic-duplex operation
  - **1000T Full:** 1000 Mbps, full-duplex operation
4. Touch the **Save** button. The printer turns off and then on.

## Printer security features

Restrict who has access to configuration settings, secure data, and prevent access to valuable hardware components.

### Introduction

The printer includes several security features to restrict who has access to configuration settings, to secure data, and to prevent access to valuable hardware components.

### Security statements

Review this important security statement.

The printer supports security standards and recommended protocols that help you keep the printer secure, protect critical information on your network, and simplify the way you monitor and maintain the printer.

### Assign an administrator password

Assign an administrator password for access to the printer and the HP Embedded Web Server so that unauthorized users cannot change the printer settings.



## Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to set the password

Use the following steps to set a password for the printer.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
  - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
  - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.



 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Click the **Security** tab.
3. Open the **General Security** menu.
4. In the area labeled **Set the Local Administrator Password**, enter the name to associate with the password in the **Username** field.
5. Enter the password in the **New Password** field, and then enter it again in the **Verify Password** field.

 **NOTE:** To change an existing password, first enter the existing password in the **Old Password** field.

6. Click the **Apply** button.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make note of the password and store it in a safe place. The administrator password cannot be recovered. If the administrator password is lost or forgotten, contact HP Support for the assistance required to completely reset the printer.

[Click here to contact HP Support about resetting the printer password.](#)

## Provide user access credentials at the printer control panel

Use the following steps to sign into the control panel.

Some features on the printer control panel can be secured so that unauthorized people cannot use them. When a feature is secured, the printer prompts you to sign in before you can use it. You can also sign in without waiting for a prompt by selecting **Sign In** from the printer control panel.

Typically, the credentials for signing in to the printer are the same as for signing in to the network. Consult the network administrator for this printer if you have questions about which credentials to use.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Sign In**.
2. Follow the prompts to enter the credentials.

 **NOTE:** To maintain security for the printer, select **Sign Out** when you have finished using the printer.

## IP Security

IP Security (IPsec) is a set of protocols that control IP-based network traffic to and from the printer. IPsec provides host-to-host authentication, data integrity, and encryption of network communications.

For printers that are connected to the network and have an HP Jetdirect print server, you can configure IPsec by using the **Networking** tab in the HP Embedded Web Server.

## Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks

The hard disk provides hardware-based encryption so you can securely store sensitive data without impacting printer performance. This hard disk uses the latest Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) and has versatile time-saving features and robust functionality.

Use the **Security** menu in the HP Embedded Web Server to configure the disk.

## Lock the formatter

The formatter has a slot that you can use to attach a security cable.

Locking the formatter prevents someone from removing valuable components from it.

## Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks

The hard disk provides hardware-based encryption so you can securely store sensitive data without impacting printer performance. This hard disk uses the latest Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) and has versatile time-saving features and robust functionality.

Use the **Security** menu in the HP Embedded Web Server to configure the disk.

## Energy-conservation settings

Learn about the energy-conservation settings that are available for the printer.

## Print with EconoMode

This printer has an EconoMode option for printing drafts of documents. Using EconoMode can use less toner. However, using EconoMode can also reduce print quality.

HP does not recommend the full-time use of EconoMode. If EconoMode is used full-time, the toner supply might outlast the mechanical parts in the toner cartridge. If print quality begins to degrade and is no longer acceptable, consider replacing the toner cartridge.



---

**NOTE:** If this option is not available in the print driver, set it using the printer control panel.

---

Configure EconoMode from the printer control panel:

1. From the printer control panel, open the **Settings** menu.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **Copy/Print** or **Print**
  - b. **Default Print Options**
  - c. **Quality Level**

3. Select [EconoMode](#) to enable the feature.

## Set the sleep timer and configure the printer to use 1 watt or less of power

The sleep settings affect how much power the printer uses, the wake/sleep time, how quickly the printer enters sleep mode, and how quickly the printer wakes up from sleep mode.

To configure the printer to use 1 watt or less of power while in sleep mode, enter times for both the [Sleep after Inactivity](#) and [Auto Off after sleep](#) settings.



**NOTE:** HP does not recommend using deep sleep settings if you have Security Solutions installed. In some situations, the printer does not wake from deep sleep. For additional information, contact your HP representative.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [General](#)
  - b. [Energy Settings](#)
  - c. [Sleep Settings](#)
3. Select [Sleep after Inactivity](#) to specify the number of minutes the printer is inactive before it enters sleep mode. Enter the appropriate time period.
4. Select [Auto Off after sleep](#) to put the printer into a deeper power save mode after a period of sleep. Enter the appropriate time period.



**NOTE:** By default, the printer will wake from Auto Off in response to any activity other than USB or Wi-Fi. For greater energy settings, you can set it to wake only to the power button by selecting [Shut down \(wake on power button only\)](#).

5. Select [Done](#) to save the settings.

## Set the sleep schedule

Use the [Sleep Schedule](#) feature to configure the printer to automatically wake or go into Sleep mode at specific times on specific days of the week.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [General](#)
  - b. [Energy Settings](#)
  - c. [Sleep Schedule](#)
3. Select the [New Event](#) button, and then select the type of event to schedule: [Wake Event](#) or [Sleep Event](#).
4. For a wake or sleep event, configure the time and the days of the week for the event. Select [Save](#) to save the setting.

## HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is an award-winning, industry-leading tool for efficiently managing a wide variety of networked HP products, including printers, multifunction printers, and digital senders. This single solution allows you to remotely install, monitor, maintain, troubleshoot, and secure your printing and imaging environment – ultimately increasing business productivity by helping you save time, control costs, and protect your investment.

HP Web Jetadmin upgrades are periodically made available to provide support for specific product features. Go to [www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin](http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin) for more information.

## Software and firmware updates

HP regularly updates features that are available in the printer firmware. To take advantage of the most current features, update the printer firmware.

Download the most recent firmware update file from the web:

Go to [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP). Click **Software, Drivers and Firmware**.

## 9 Solve problems

Troubleshoot problems with the printer. Locate additional resources for help and technical support.

The following information is correct at the time of publication. For current information, see [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

For more information:

HP's all-inclusive help for the printer includes the following information:

- Install and configure
- Learn and use
- Solve problems
- Download software and firmware updates
- Join support forums
- Find warranty and regulatory information

## Customer support

Find support contact options for your HP printer.

**Table 9-1 Customer support options**

| Support option                                                                         | Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Get telephone support for your country/region.                                         | Country/region phone numbers are on the flyer that was in the box with the printer or at <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a> .                                                                                                       |
| Have the printer name, serial number, date of purchase, and problem description ready. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Get 24-hour Internet support, and download software utilities and drivers.             | <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP">www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP</a> , <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP">www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP</a> , or <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP">www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP</a> |
| Order additional HP service or maintenance agreements.                                 | <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/carepack">www.hp.com/go/carepack</a>                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Register the printer.                                                                  | <a href="http://www.register.hp.com">www.register.hp.com</a>                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Control panel help system

The printer has a built-in Help system that explains how to use each screen. To open the Help system, touch the Help button  in the upper-right corner of the screen.



For some screens, the Help opens to a global menu where you can search for specific topics. You can browse through the menu structure by touching the buttons in the menu.

Some Help screens include animations that show specific procedures, such as clearing paper jams.

If the printer alerts of an error or warning, touch the Help button  to open a message that describes the problem. The message also contains instructions to help solve the problem.

## Reset factory settings

Resetting the printer settings to the factory-set defaults can help resolve problems.

### Introduction

Use one of the following methods to reset the printer settings to the original settings from the factory.

### Method one: Reset factory settings from the printer control panel

Use the printer control panel to restore the settings to their original values.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Settings** application, and then select the **Settings** icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. **General**
  - b. **Reset Factory Settings**
3. Select **Reset**.

A verification message advises that completing the reset function might result in loss of data.

4. Select **Reset** to complete the process.



**NOTE:** The printer restarts automatically after the reset operation completes.

## Method two: Reset factory settings from the HP Embedded Web Server (network-connected printers only)

Use the HP EWS to reset the printer settings to the original settings.

1. On the printer control panel, select the Information button , and then select the Network icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open the **General** tab.
3. On the left side of the screen, click **Reset Factory Settings**.
4. Click the **Reset** button.



**NOTE:** The printer restarts automatically after the reset operation completes.

## A “Cartridge is low” or “Cartridge is very low” message displays on the printer control panel or EWS

Review the possible solutions to this issue.

**Cartridge is low:** The printer indicates when a toner cartridge level is low. Actual toner cartridge life remaining may vary. Consider having a replacement available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable. The toner cartridge does not need to be replaced now.

**Cartridge is very low:** The printer indicates when the toner cartridge level is very low. Actual toner cartridge life remaining may vary. Consider having a replacement available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable. The toner cartridge does not need to be replaced now unless the print quality is no longer acceptable.

HP’s Premium Protection Warranty expires near the end of useable cartridge life. Check the Supplies Status Page or the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) for the status.

### Change the “Very Low” settings

You can change the way the printer reacts when supplies reach the Very Low state. You do not have to re-establish these settings when you install a new cartridge.

### Change the “Very Low” settings at the control panel

Change the setting at the printer control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Manage Supplies](#)
  - b. [Very Low Behavior](#)
  - c. [Black Cartridge](#) or [Color Cartridges](#)
3. Select one of the following options:
  - Select the [Stop](#) option to set the printer to stop printing when the cartridge reaches the **Very Low** threshold.

- Select the **Prompt to continue** option to set the printer to stop printing when the cartridge reaches the **Very Low** threshold. You can acknowledge the prompt or replace the cartridge to resume printing.
- Select the **Continue** option to set the printer to alert you that the cartridge is very low, and to continue printing beyond the **Very Low** setting without interaction. This can result in unsatisfactory print quality.

## For printers with fax capability

When the printer is set to the **Stop** or **Prompt to continue** option, there is some risk that faxes will not print when the printer resumes printing. This can occur if the printer has received more faxes than the memory can hold while the printer is waiting.

The printer can print faxes without interruption when it passes the Very Low threshold if you select the **Continue** option for the cartridge, but print quality might degrade.

## Order supplies

Order supplies and paper for your HP printer.

**Table 9-2** Ordering options

| Ordering option                              | Ordering information                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Order supplies and paper                     | <a href="http://www.hp.com">www.hp.com</a>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Order through service or support providers   | Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) | To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP website, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies. |

## Printer does not pick up paper or misfeeds

Use this information if the printer is not picking up paper from the tray or is picking up multiple sheets of paper at one time.

### Introduction

The following solutions can help solve problems if the printer is not picking up paper from the tray or is picking up multiple sheets of paper at one time. Either of these situations can result in paper jams.

### The printer does not pick up paper

If the printer does not pick up paper from the tray, try these solutions:

1. Open the printer and remove any jammed sheets of paper. Verify that no torn remnants of paper remain inside the printer.
2. Load the tray with the correct size of paper for the job.
3. Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the printer control panel.



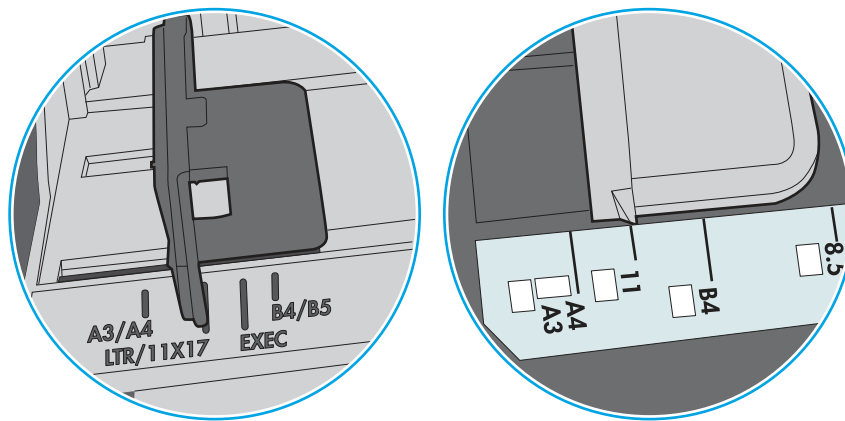
4. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray. The arrow on the tray guide should line up exactly with the marking on the tray.



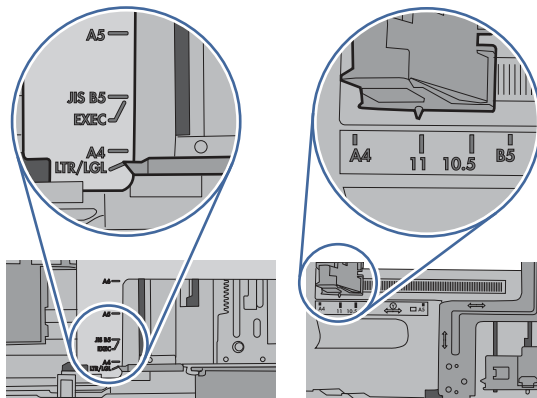
**NOTE:** Do not adjust the paper guides tightly against the paper stack. Adjust them to the indentations or markings in the tray.

The following images show examples of the paper-size indentations in the trays for various printers. Most HP printers have markings similar to these.

**Figure 9-1** Size markings for Tray 1 or the multipurpose tray



**Figure 9-2** Size markings for cassette trays

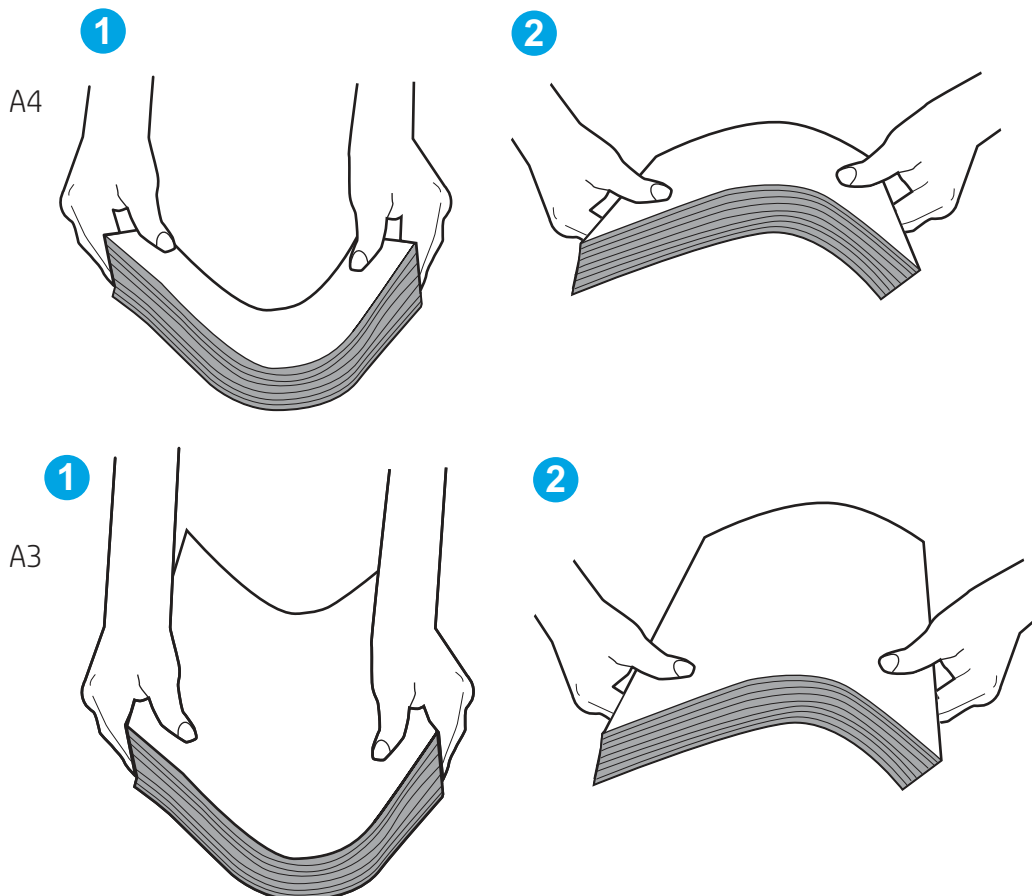


5. Verify that the humidity in the room is within specifications for this printer and that paper is being stored in unopened packages. Most reams of paper are sold in moisture-proof wrapping to keep paper dry.

In high-humidity environments, paper at the top of the stack in the tray can absorb moisture, and it might have a wavy or uneven appearance. If this happens, remove the top 5 to 10 sheets of paper from the stack.

In low-humidity environments, excess static electricity can cause sheets of paper to stick together. If this happens, remove the paper from the tray, and flex the stack by holding it at each end and bringing the ends up to form a U shape. Then, rotate the ends down to reverse the U shape. Next, hold each side of the stack of paper and repeat this process. This process releases individual sheets without introducing static electricity. Straighten the paper stack against a table before returning it to the tray.

**Figure 9-3** Technique for flexing the paper stack

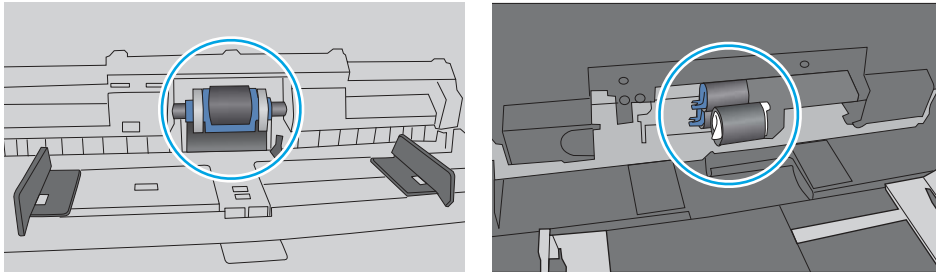


6. Check the printer control panel to see if it is displaying a prompt to feed the paper manually. Load paper, and continue.
7. The rollers above the tray might be contaminated. Clean the rollers with a lint-free cloth dampened with warm water. Use distilled water, if it is available.

**CAUTION:** Do not spray water directly onto the printer. Instead, spray water on the cloth or dab the cloth in water and wring it out before cleaning the rollers.

The following image shows examples of the roller location for various printers.

**Figure 9-4** Roller locations for Tray 1 or the multipurpose tray



## The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper

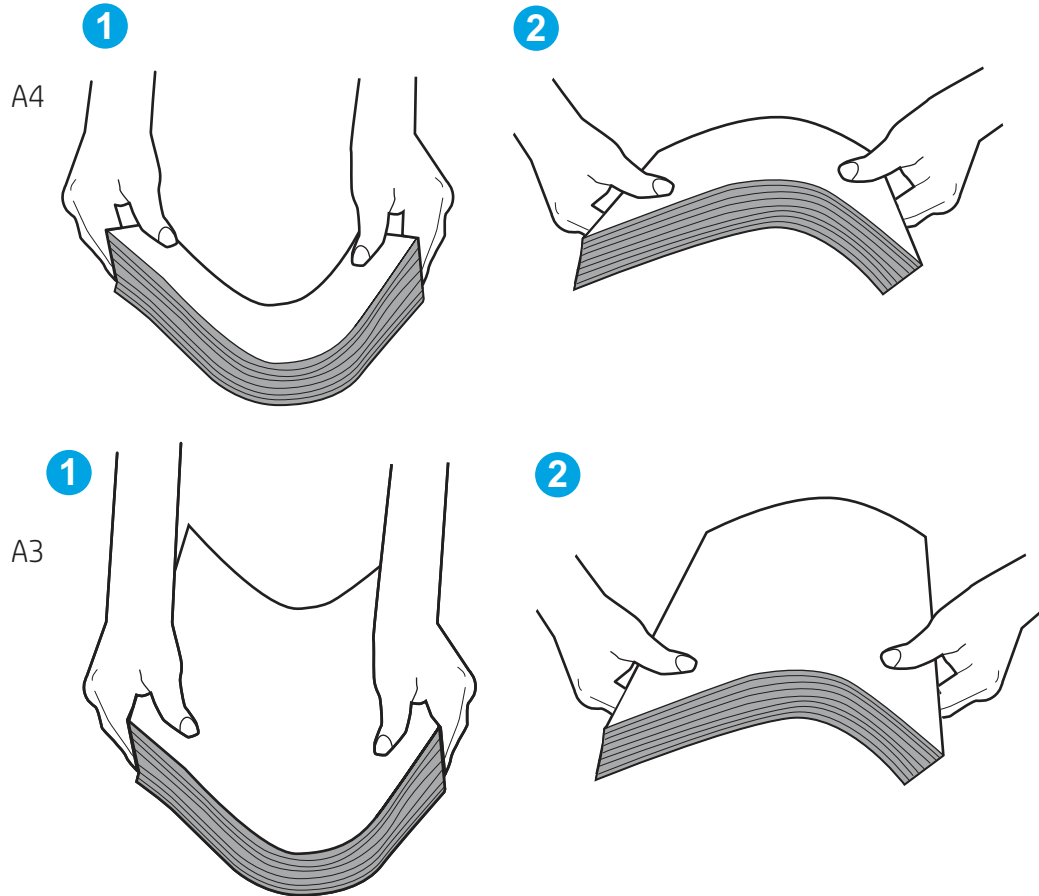
If the printer picks up multiple sheets of paper from the tray, try these solutions:

1. Remove the stack of paper from the tray and flex it, rotate it 180 degrees, and flip it over. *Do not fan the paper.* Return the stack of paper to the tray.



**NOTE:** Fanning the paper introduces static electricity. Instead of fanning the paper, flex the stack by holding it at each end and bringing the ends up to form a U shape. Then, rotate the ends down to reverse the U shape. Next, hold each side of the stack of paper and repeat this process. This process releases individual sheets without introducing static electricity. Straighten the paper stack against a table before returning it to the tray.

**Figure 9-5** Technique for flexing the paper stack



2. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
3. Verify that the humidity in the room is within specifications for this printer, and that paper is being stored in unopened packages. Most reams of paper are sold in moisture-proof wrapping to keep paper dry.

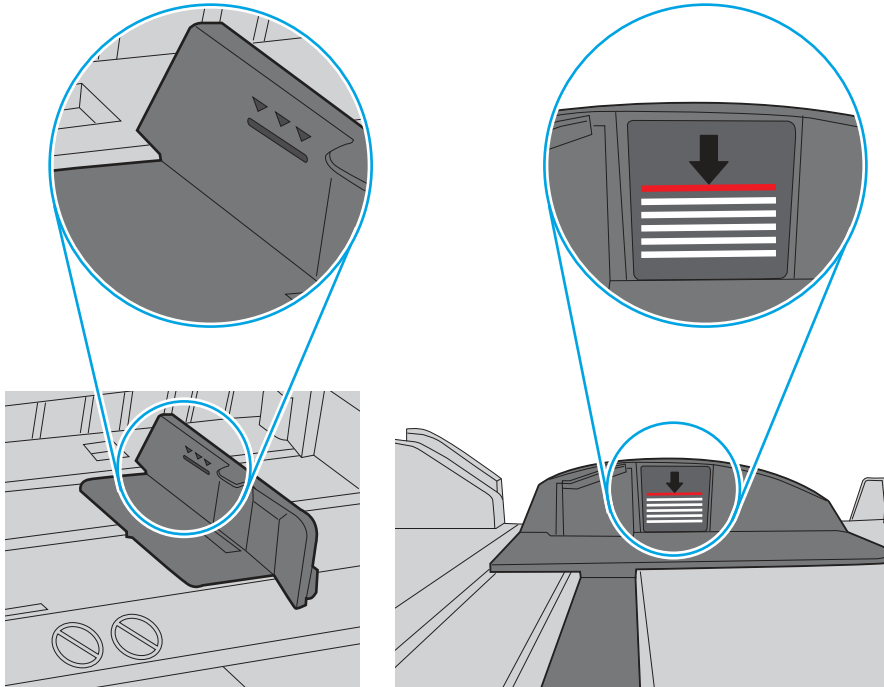
In high-humidity environments, paper at the top of the stack in the tray can absorb moisture, and it might have a wavy or uneven appearance. If this happens, remove the top 5 to 10 sheets of paper from the stack.

In low-humidity environments, excess static electricity can cause sheets of paper to stick together. If this happens, remove the paper from the tray and flex the stack as described above.

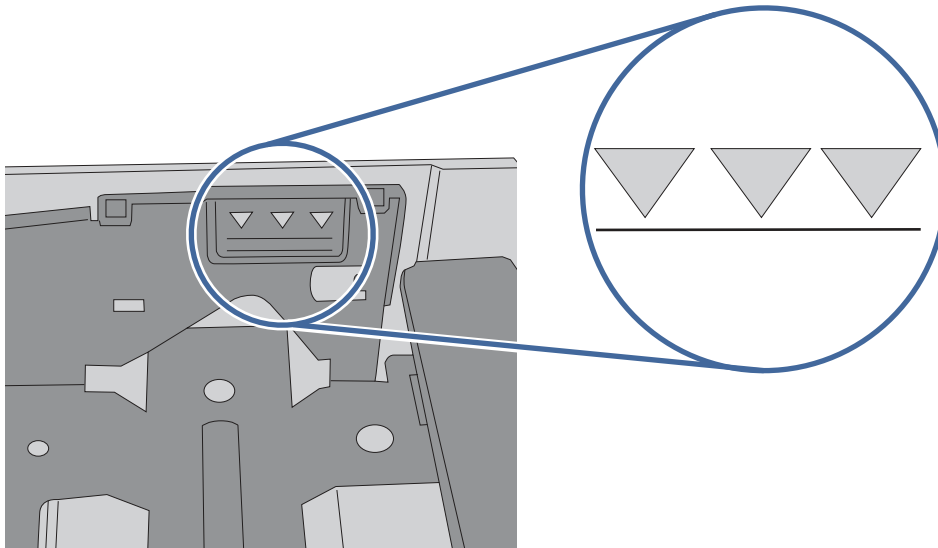
4. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
5. Make sure the tray is not overfilled by checking the stack-height markings inside the tray. If it is overfilled, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.

The following examples show the stack-height markings in the trays for various printers. Most HP printers have markings similar to these. Also make sure that all sheets of paper are below the tabs near the stack-height marks. These tabs help hold the paper in the correct position as it enters the printer.

**Figure 9-6** Stack-height markings



**Figure 9-7** Tab for the paper stack



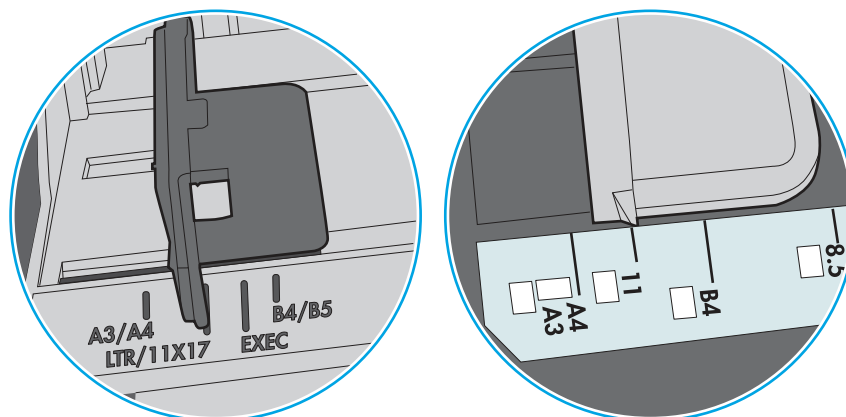
6. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray. The arrow on the tray guide should line up exactly with the marking on the tray.



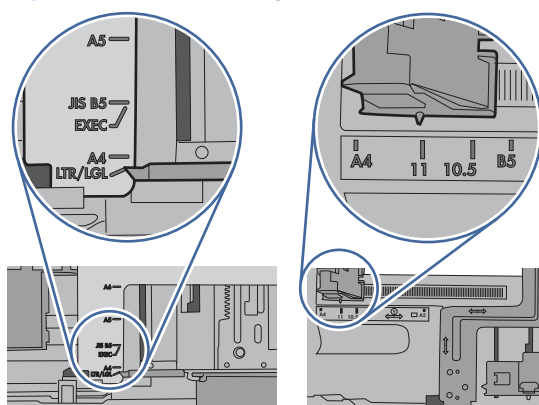
**NOTE:** Do not adjust the paper guides tightly against the paper stack. Adjust them to the indentations or markings in the tray.

The following images show examples of the paper-size indentations in the trays for various printers. Most HP printers have markings similar to these.

**Figure 9-8** Size markings for Tray 1 or the multipurpose tray



**Figure 9-9** Size markings for cassette trays



7. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

## The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper

If the document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper, try these solutions.



**NOTE:** This information applies to MFP printers only.

- The original might have something on it, such as staples or self-adhesive notes, that must be removed.
- Check that all rollers are in place and that the roller-access cover inside the document feeder is closed.
- Make sure that the top document-feeder cover is closed.
- The pages might not be placed correctly. Straighten the pages and adjust the paper guides to center the stack.
- The paper guides must be touching the sides of the paper stack to work correctly. Make sure that the paper stack is straight and the guides are against the paper stack.

- The document feeder input tray or output bin might contain more than the maximum number of pages. Make sure the paper stack fits below the guides in the input tray, and remove pages from the output bin.
- Verify that there are no pieces of paper, staples, paper clips, or other debris in the paper path.
- Clean the document-feeder rollers and the separation pad. Use compressed air or a clean, lint-free cloth moistened with warm water. If misfeeds still occur, replace the rollers.
- From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Supplies](#) button. Check the status of the document-feeder kit, and replace it if necessary.

## Clear paper jams

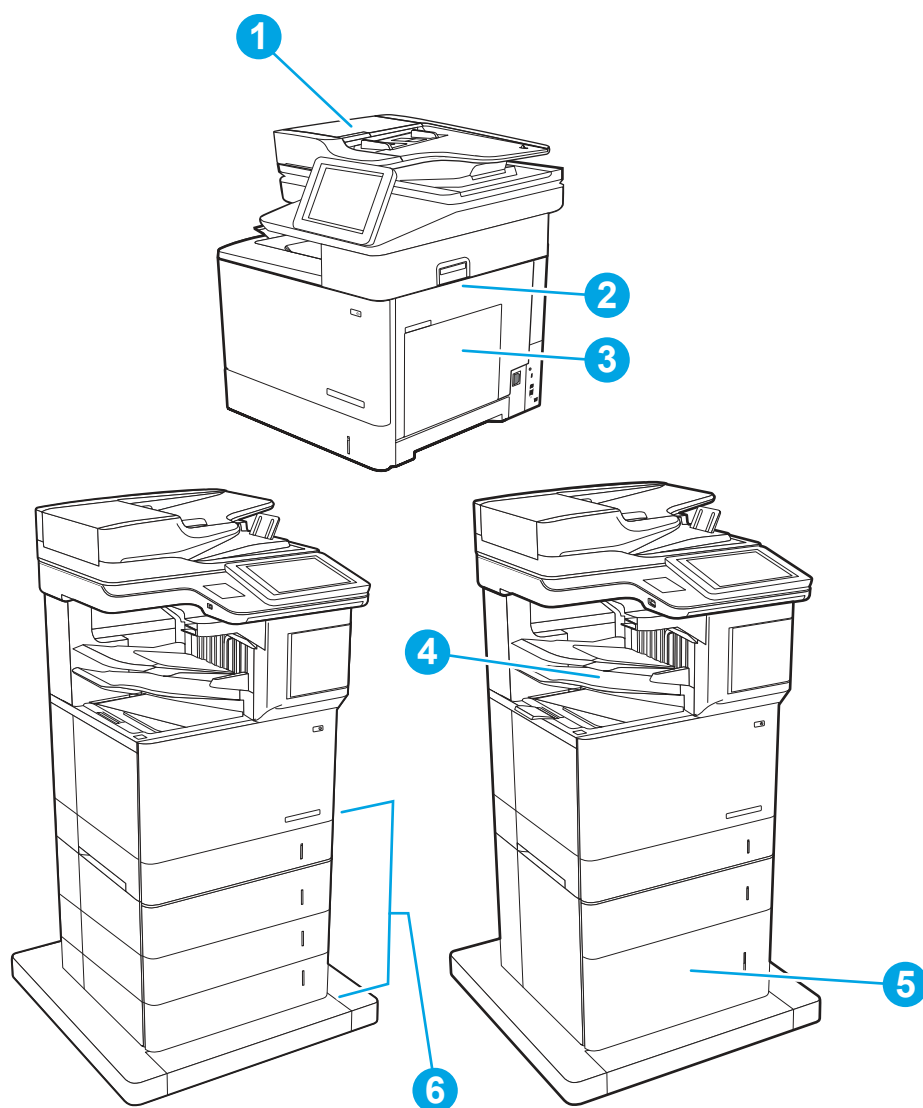
Use the following procedures to clear paper jams.

### Introduction

The following information includes instructions for clearing paper jams from the printer.

### Paper jam locations

Learn about the paper jam locations.



| Number    | Description                     |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| 1         | Document feeder                 |
| 2         | Duplexer and fuser              |
| 3         | Tray 1                          |
| 4         | Output bin, HP Stapling Mailbox |
| 5         | 2,000-sheet HCl feeder          |
| 6         | Trays 2-5                       |
| Not shown | Envelope feeder                 |

## Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.



The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

## Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.

1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the [Trays](#) menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

## 31.13.yz Clear paper jams in the document feeder

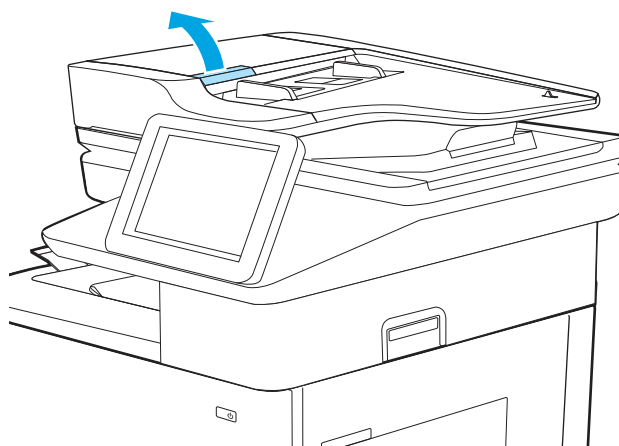
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

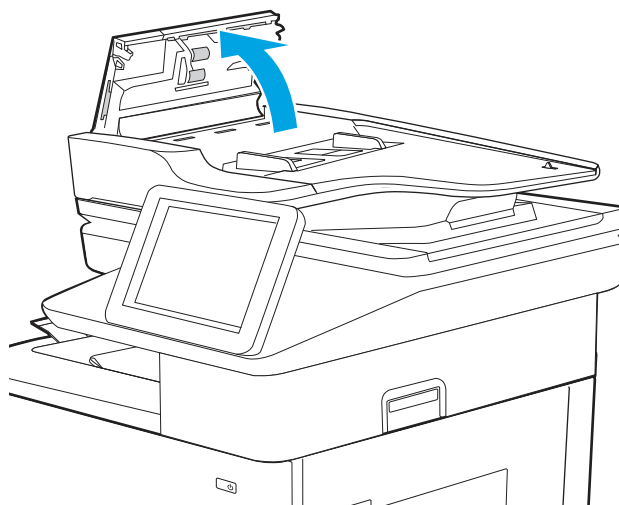
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the document feeder. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- **31.13.yz Jam in Document Feeder**

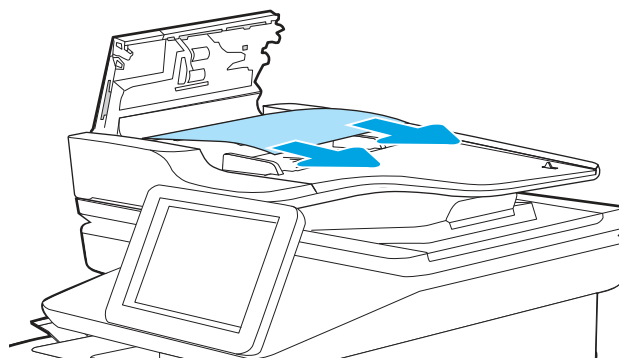
1. Lift the document-feeder latch.



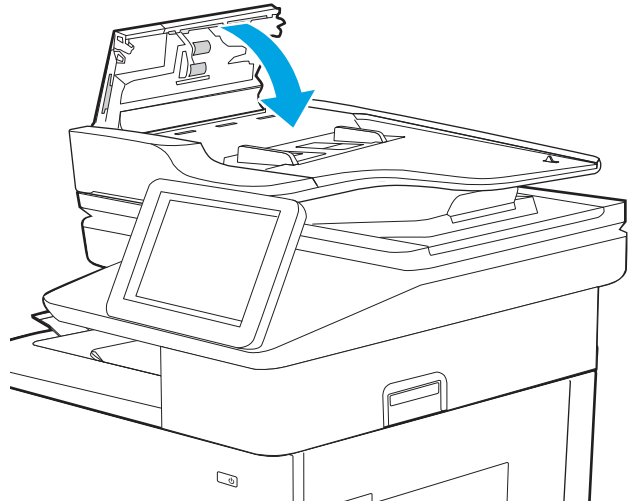
2. Open the document-feeder cover.



3. Gently remove any jammed paper.



- 4.. Close the document-feeder cover.



- 5.. If the error persists, ensure that the paper meets the document feeder (ADF) specifications for the printer.

This document outlines the supported weights and sizes of the ADF including best practices:

[HP LaserJet and PageWide Array Enterprise and Managed 500 and 600 - Use the automatic document feeder \(ADF\)](#)

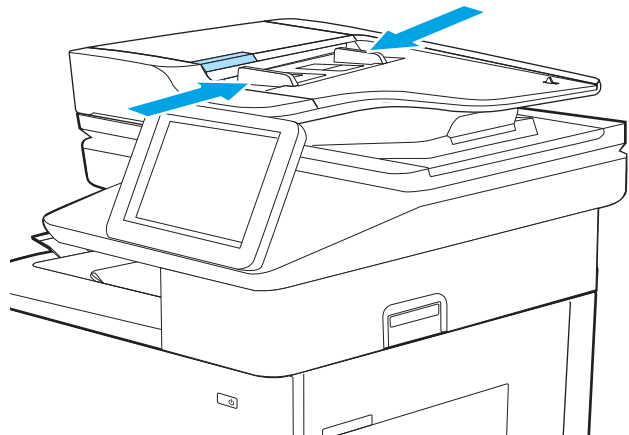
- 6.. Ensure that the input tray is not overloaded and that the tray guides are set to the correct size. Make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.



**NOTE:** To avoid jams, remove all staples, paper clips, or tape from original documents.



**NOTE:** Original documents that are printed on heavy, glossy paper can jam more frequently than originals that are printed on plain paper.



- 7.. Check the Document Feeder Kit consumable status.
- Navigate to and select **Supplies** on the control panel.
  - Select **Document Feeder Kit**.
  - See if the **Document Feeder Kit** status is **OK**, **Low**, or **Very Low**.
  - Recommend that the customer replace the Document Feeder Kit if the status is **Low** or **Very Low**.

Part number: [J8J95A](#)/HP 300 ADF Roller Replacement Kit.

To order parts, go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

8. Check and clean the Document Feeder Kit rollers and separation pad by removing any visible lint or dust from each of the feed rollers and the separation pad using a clean lint-free cloth moistened with warm water. View the [How to Clean the Pick Rollers in HP LaserJet and PageWide Printers](#) for detailed instructions.



**NOTE:** Lift up the roller assembly to access and clean the second roller



9. If necessary, replace the Document Feeder Kit rollers and separation pad.

Part number: [J8J95A](#)/HP 300 ADF Roller Replacement Kit

To order parts, go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

10. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

### 13.B2.D1 jam error in tray 1

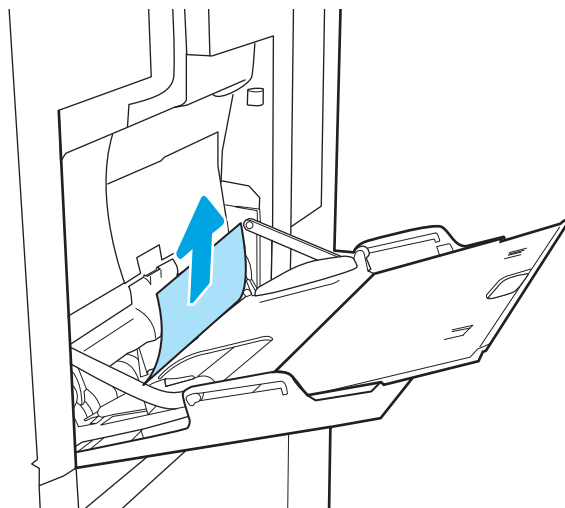
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

#### Recommended action for customers

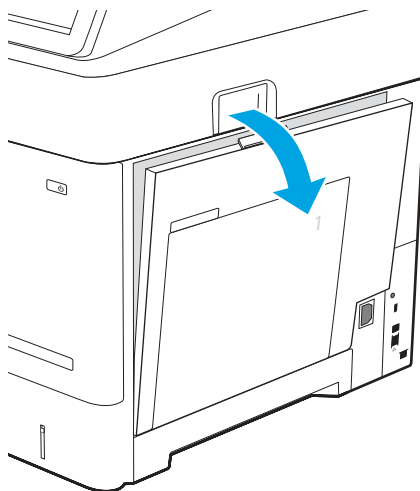
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B2.D1 Jam in right door

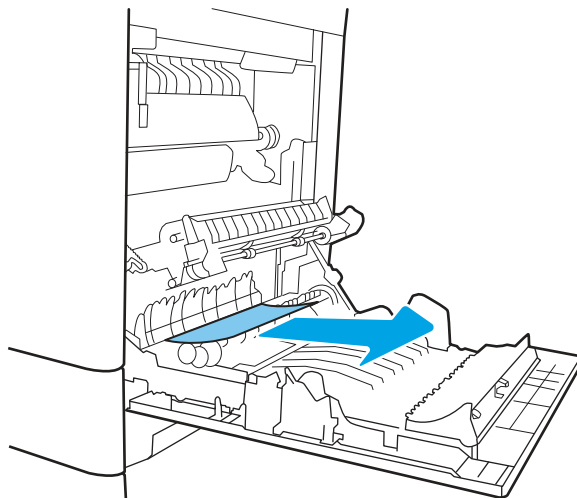
1. If jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, clear the jam by gently pulling the paper straight out.



2. If you cannot remove the paper, or if no jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, close Tray 1 and open the right door.

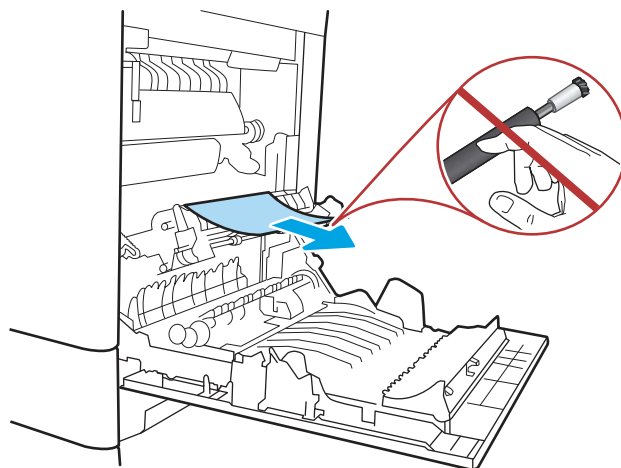


3. Gently pull out any jammed paper.

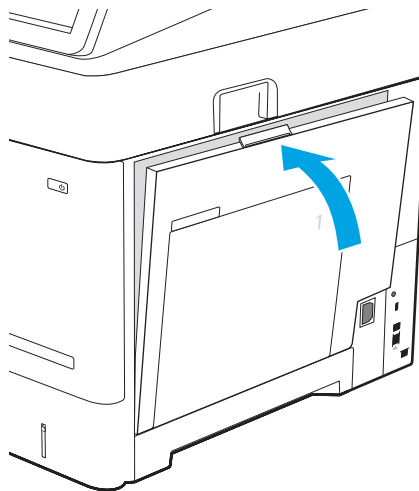


- 4.. If the paper is further through the printer, remove it by gently pulling it out from the upper section.

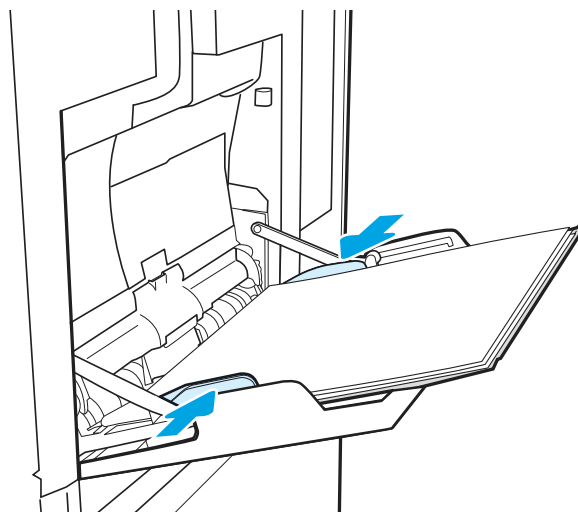
**CAUTION:** Do not touch the rollers on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.

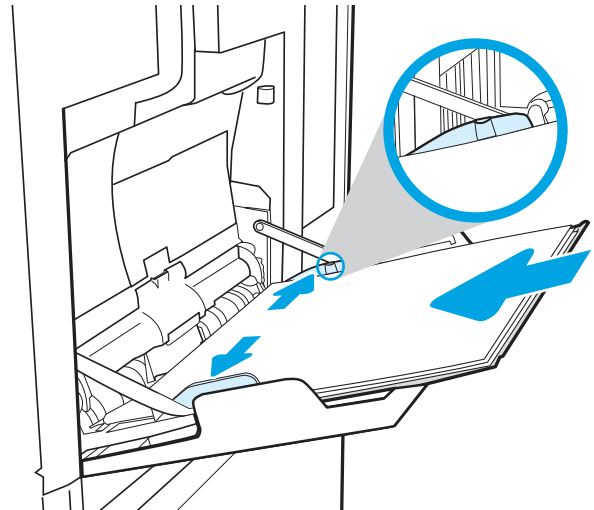


- 5.. Close the right door.

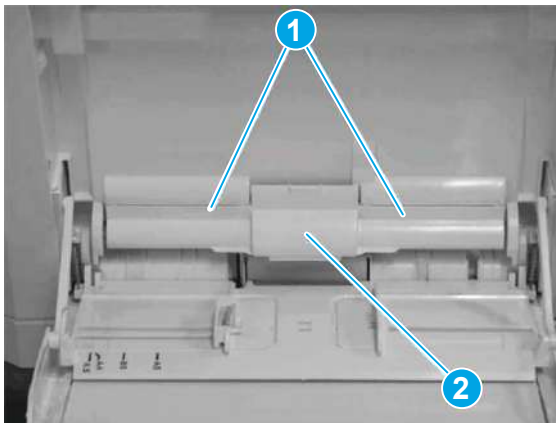


- 6.. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
- 7.. Ensure that the paper guides are set to the correct paper size and the paper is loaded into tray 1 correctly without overfilling the tray.

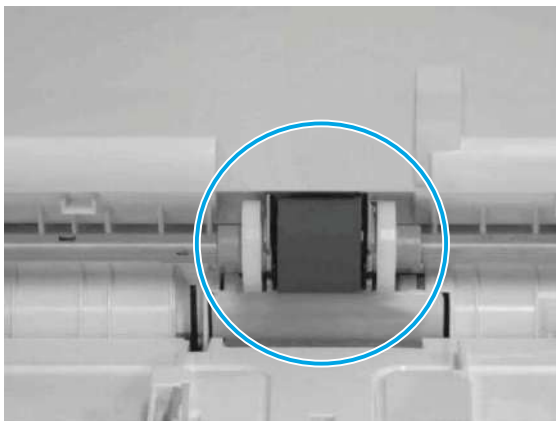




8. Clean the pickup roller with a dampened lint free cloth as needed.
  - a. Remove the tray 1 pickup roller cover. Release two tabs (callout 1) then remove the cover (callout 2).



- b. Clean the pickup roller with a dampened lint free cloth as needed.



- c. Replace the pickup roller cover and test tray 1.
- 9.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

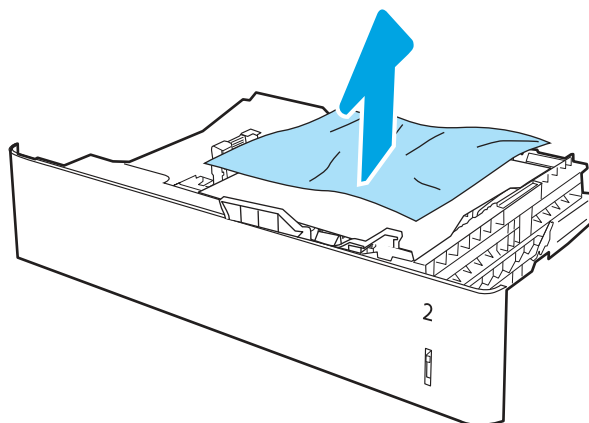
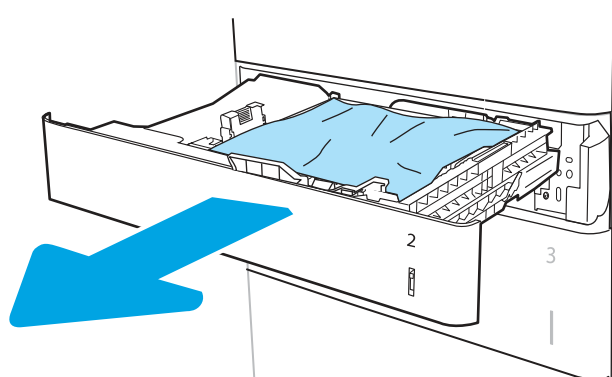
### 13.B2.D2 jam error in tray 2

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

#### Recommended action for customers

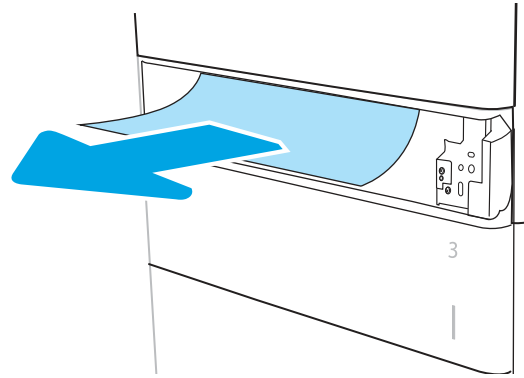
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- **13.B2.D2 Jam in right door.** This message appears if there is an issue when pulling paper from tray 2.
- 1.. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.
  - 2.. Ensure that the protective orange plastic shipping locks are removed, if present.
  - 3.. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.

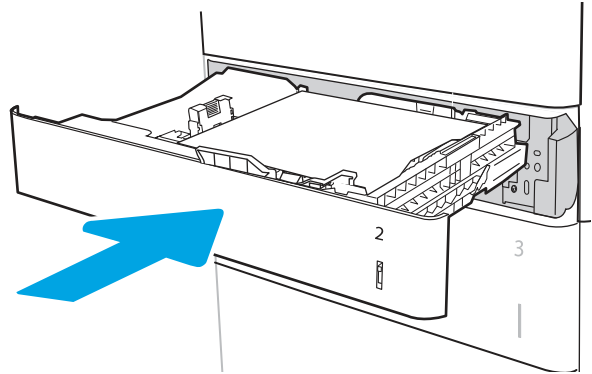




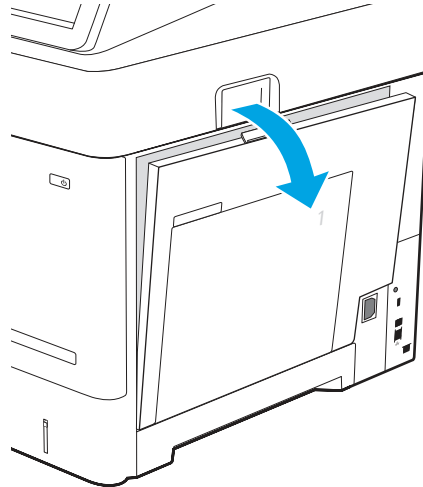
4. Gently remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



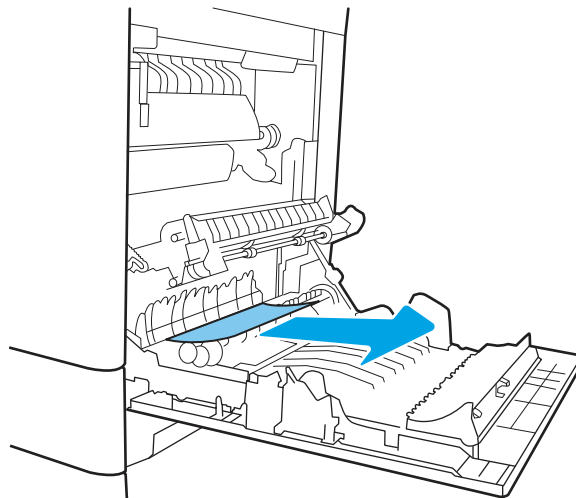
5. Install and close the tray.



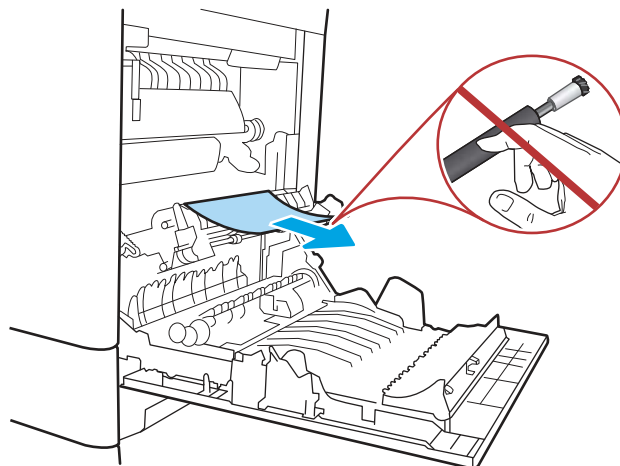
6. Open the right door.



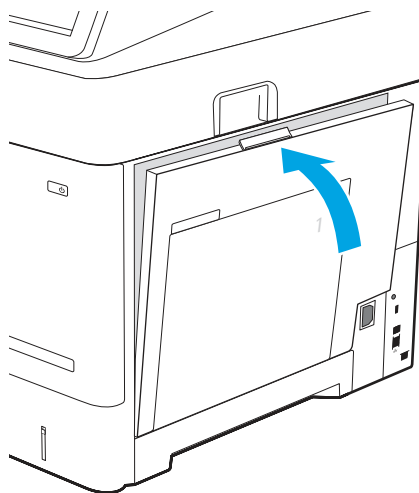
7. Look for and clear any paper present or obstructions in the paper path. Grasp the jammed paper with both hands and pull it straight out to remove it out of the printer.



**CAUTION:** Do not touch the rollers on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.



8. Close the right door to allow the printer to attempt to clear the jam message.



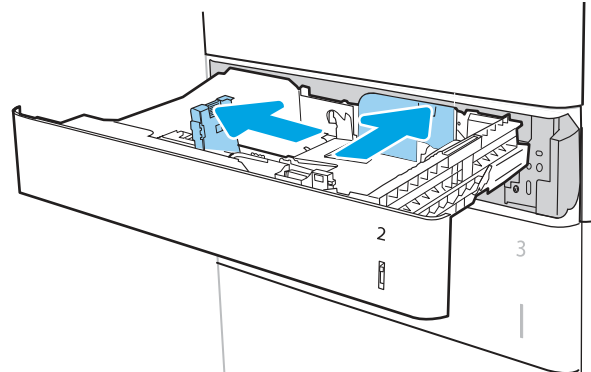
9. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.



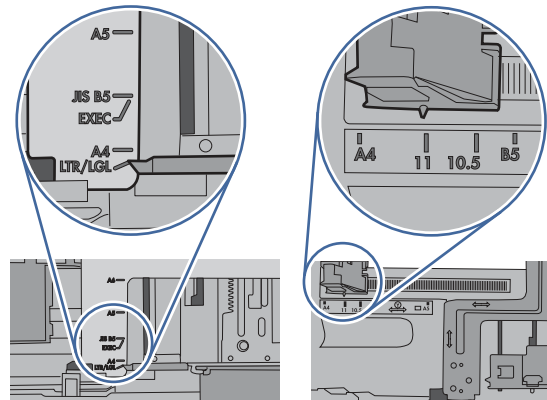
**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types](#) c05495229.

10. Ensure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray.

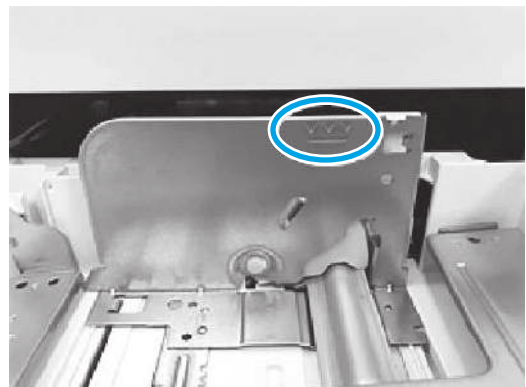
**Figure 9-10** Adjust guides



**Figure 9-11** Ensure tray size matches paper



11. Ensure the paper is not filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles). Remove any excess media.



12. If the error persists, clean or replace the tray roller kit.

Tray 2 roller assembly part number:  
J8J70-67906

To order parts, go to  
<https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

13. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

### 13.A3 jam error in tray 3

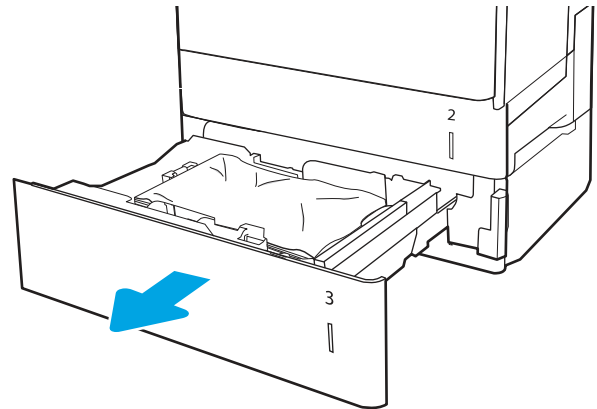
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

#### Recommended action for customers

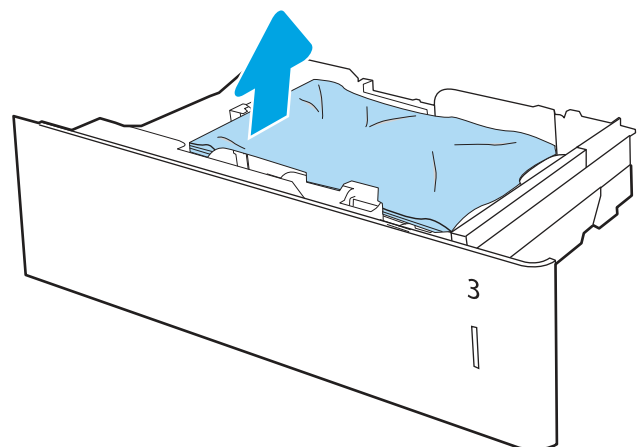
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550-sheet trays. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A3.A3 Jam in tray 3
- 13.A3.D3 Jam in tray 3

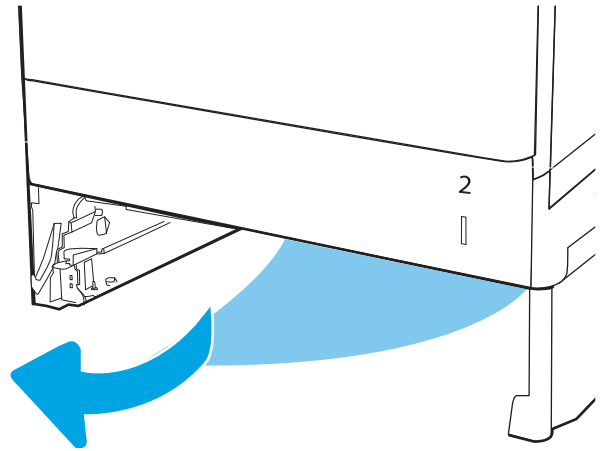
1. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



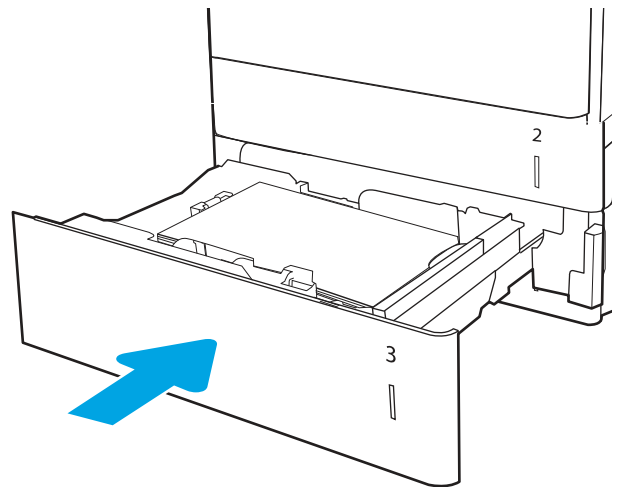
2. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



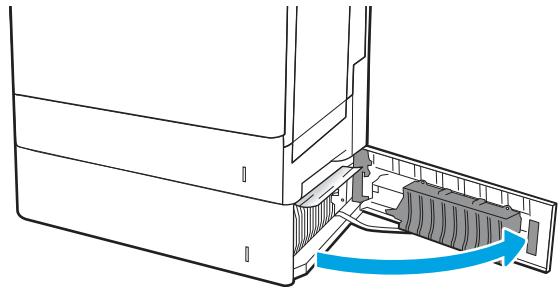
3. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



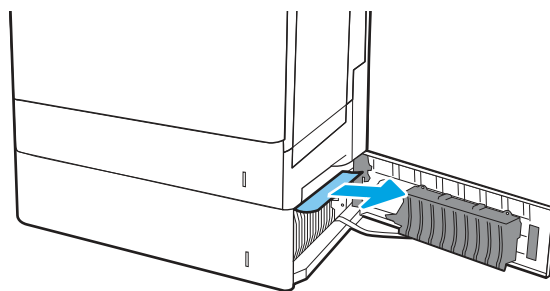
4. Install and close the tray.



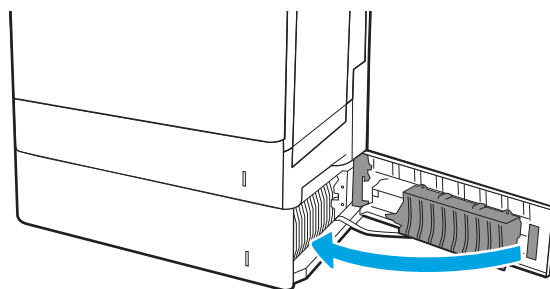
5. Open the lower-right door.



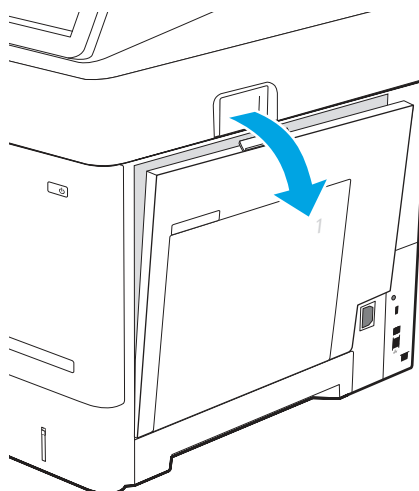
6.. Gently pull out any jammed paper.



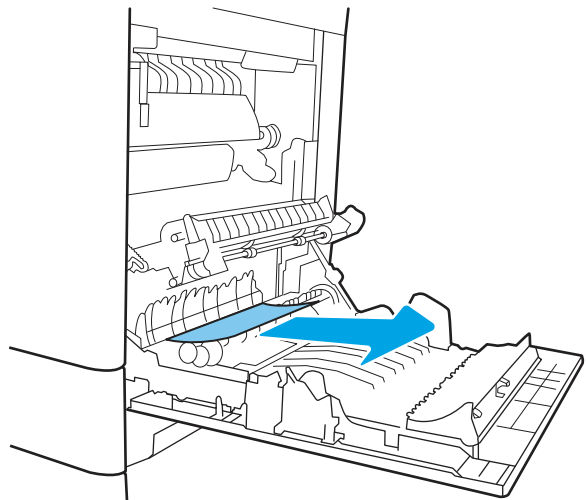
7.. Close the lower-right door.



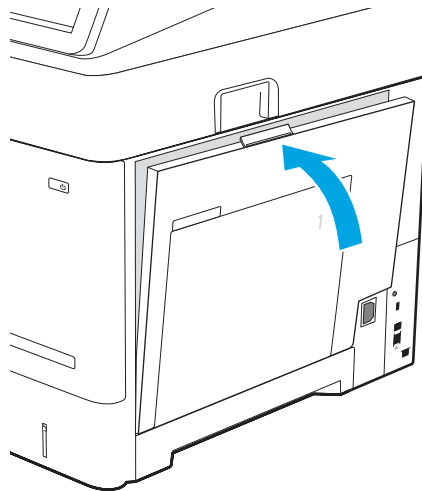
8.. Open the right door.



9. Look for and clear any paper present or obstructions in the paper path. Grasp the jammed paper with both hands and pull it straight out to remove it out of the printer.



10. Close the right door to allow the printer to attempt to clear the jam message.

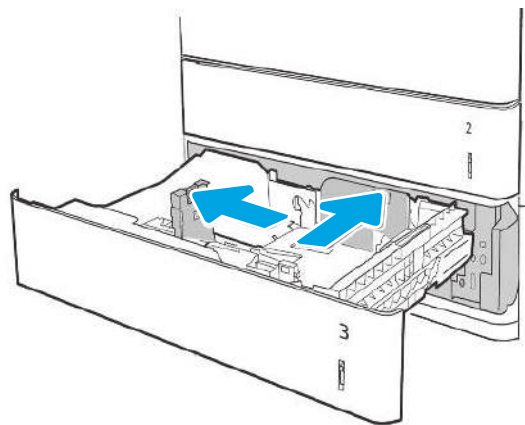


11. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

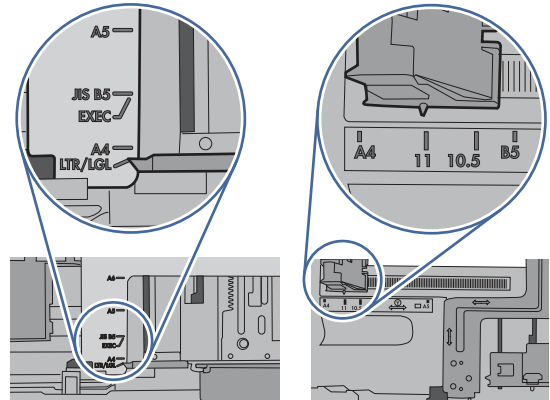


**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types](#) c05495229.

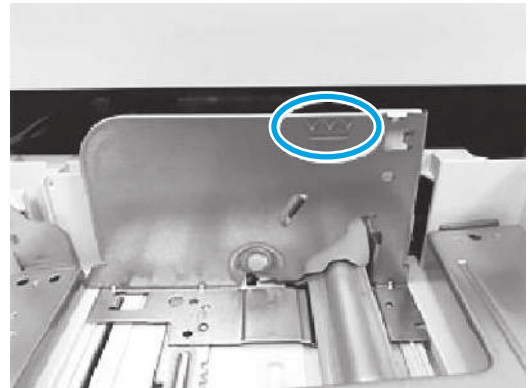
12. Ensure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray.



## Adjust the tray guides



13. Ensure the paper is not filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles). Remove any excess media.



14. Clean or replace the pickup, feed, and separation rollers as needed.



**NOTE:** Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth or paper.

Roller kit part number: J8J70-67906

To order parts, go to  
<https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

15. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.A4 jam error in tray 4

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550-sheet trays. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A4.A4 Jam in tray 4

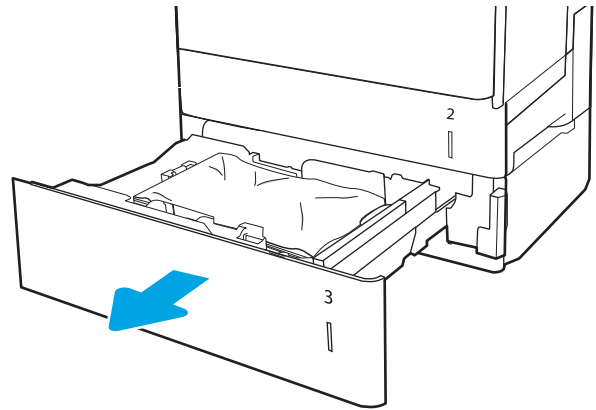


- 13.A4.D4 Jam in tray 4

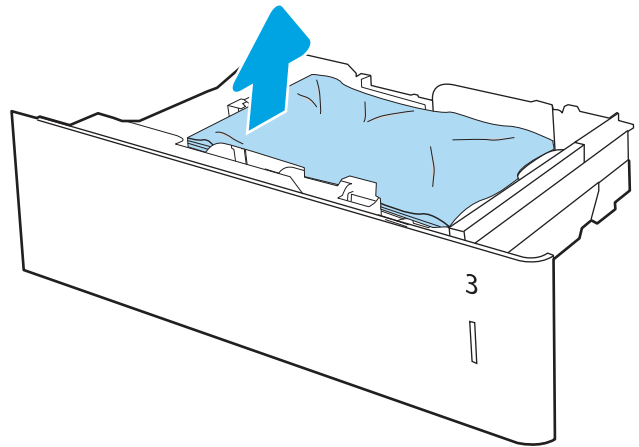
1. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



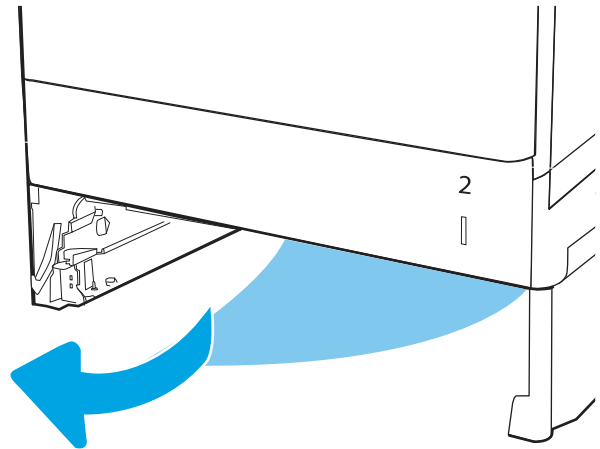
**NOTE:** For trays in the 3x550 sheet feeder all trays are identical. Image shows tray 3.



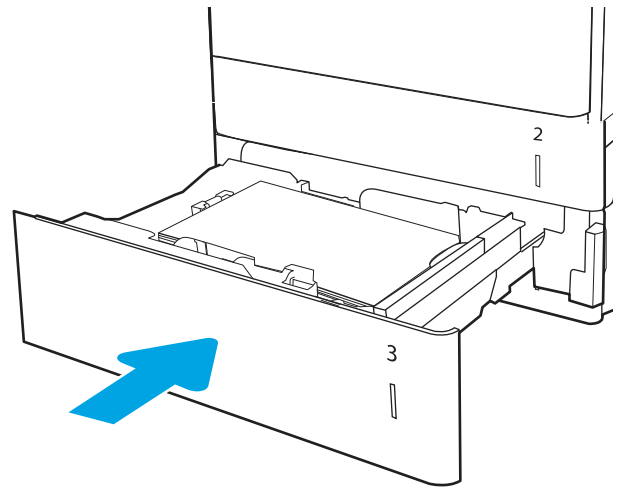
2. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



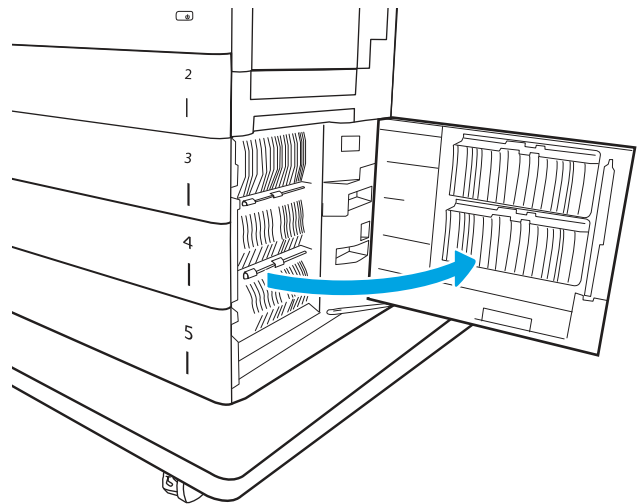
3. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



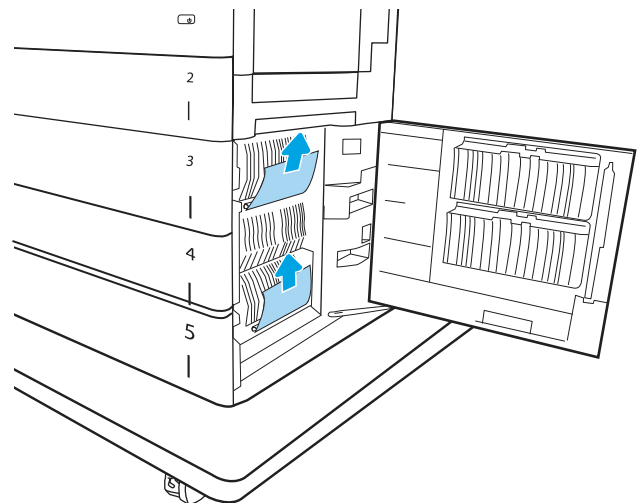
- 4.. Install and close the tray.



- 5.. Open the lower-right door.

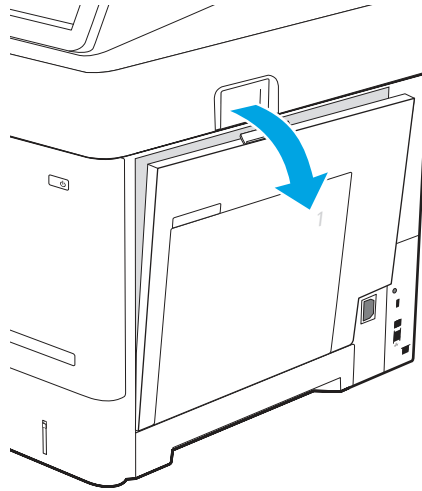


- 6.. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the specified tray.

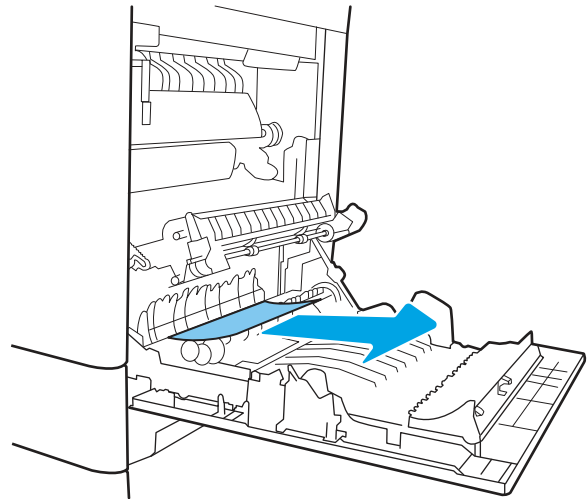


- 7.. Close the lower-right door.

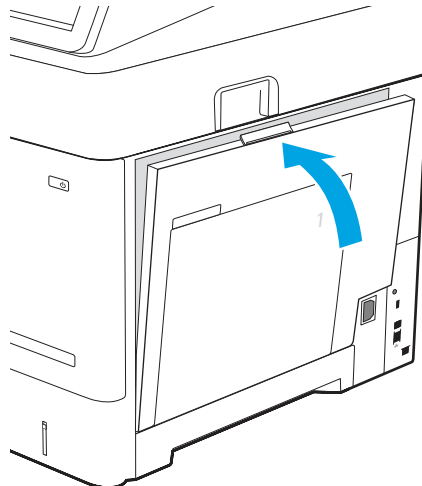
8. Open the right door.



9. Look for and clear any paper present or obstructions in the paper path. Grasp the jammed paper with both hands and pull it straight out to remove it out of the printer.



10. Close the right door to allow the printer to attempt to clear the jam message.

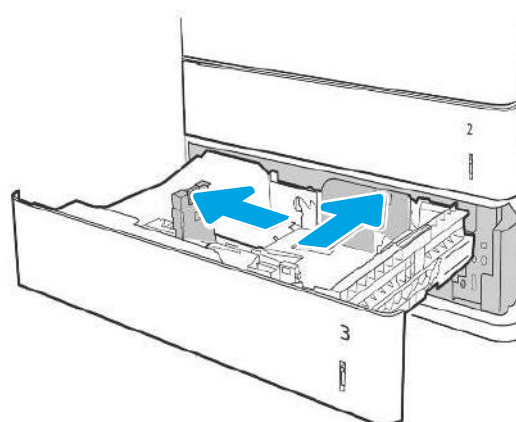


11. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

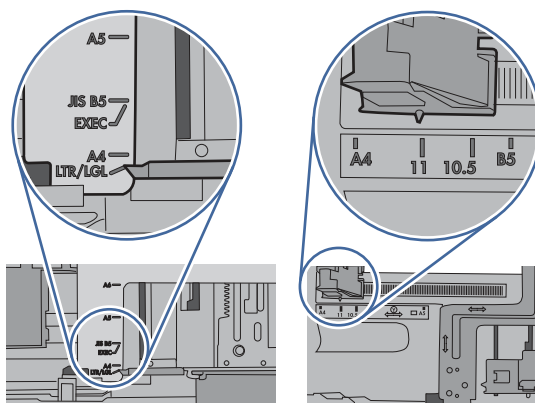
 **NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types c05495229](#).

12. Ensure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray.

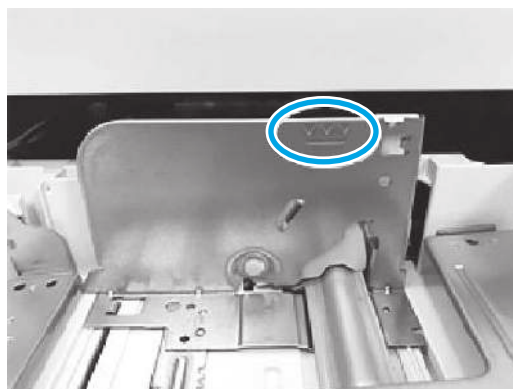
 **NOTE:** For trays in the 3x550 sheet feeder all trays are identical. Image shows tray 3.



Adjust the tray guides.



13. Ensure the paper is not filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles). Remove any excess media.



14. Clean or replace the pickup, feed, and separation rollers as needed.

 **NOTE:** Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth or paper.

Roller kit part number: J8J70-67906

To order parts, go to  
<https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

- 15.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.A4 jam error in high-capacity input (HCI) tray 4

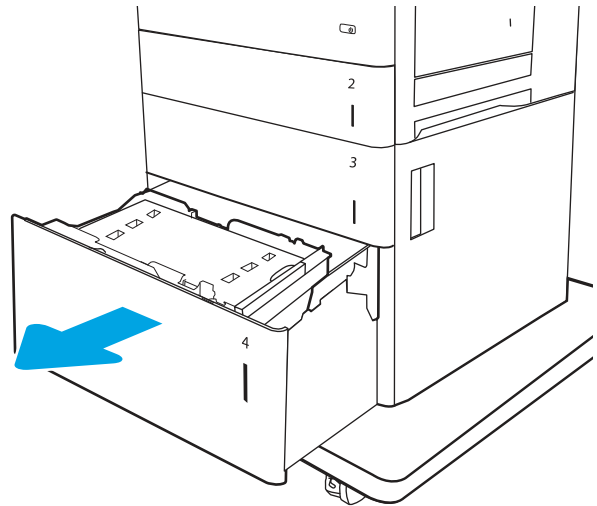
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 2,000-sheet high-capacity tray. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

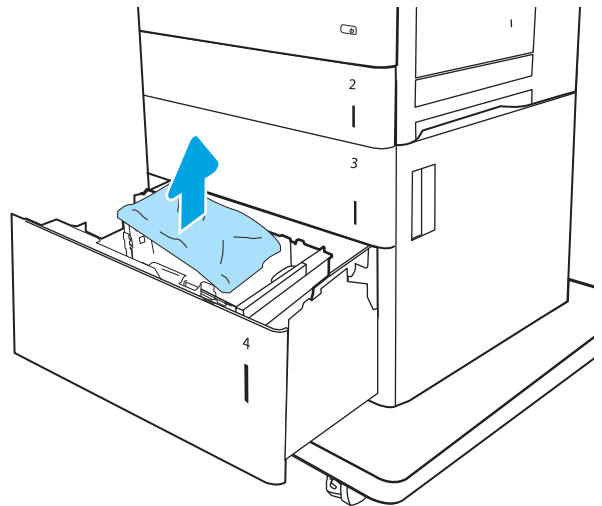
- 13.A4.A4 Jam in tray 4
- 13.A4.D4 Jam in tray 4

- 1.. Open the high-capacity input tray.



- 2.. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.

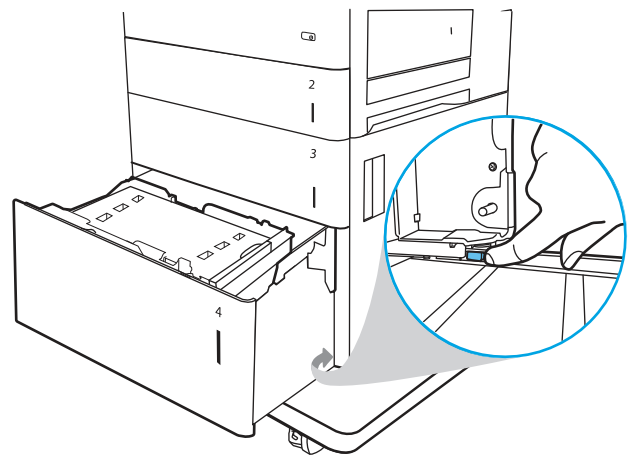
- 3.. Remove the paper from the tray.



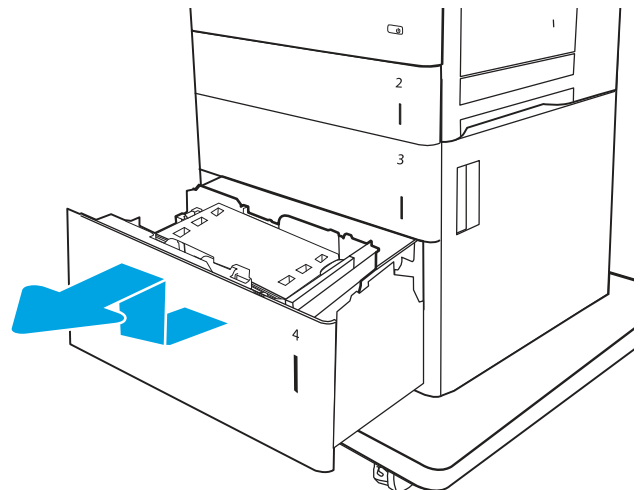
- 4.. Press the release latch on both sides of the tray to release it.



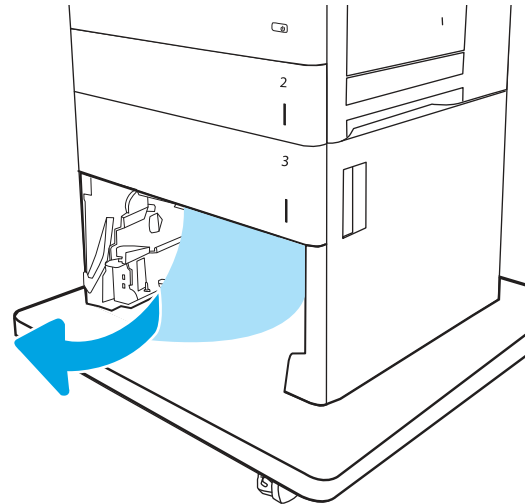
**IMPORTANT:** There is a release latch on BOTH sides of the tray.



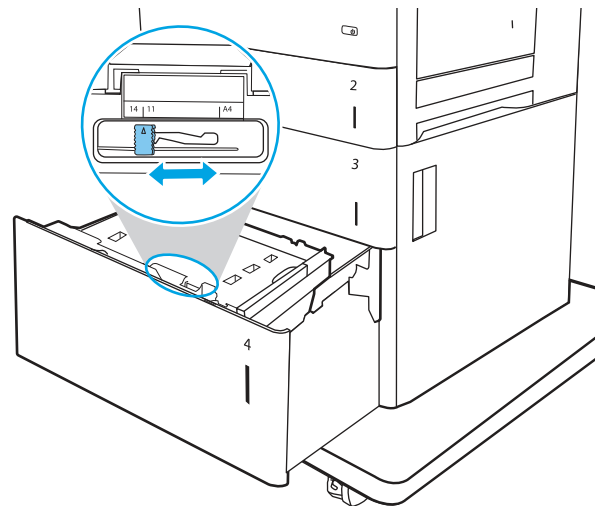
- 5.. Lift the tray up and then pull it straight out to remove it.



6. If jammed paper is in the feed area, pull it down to remove it. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



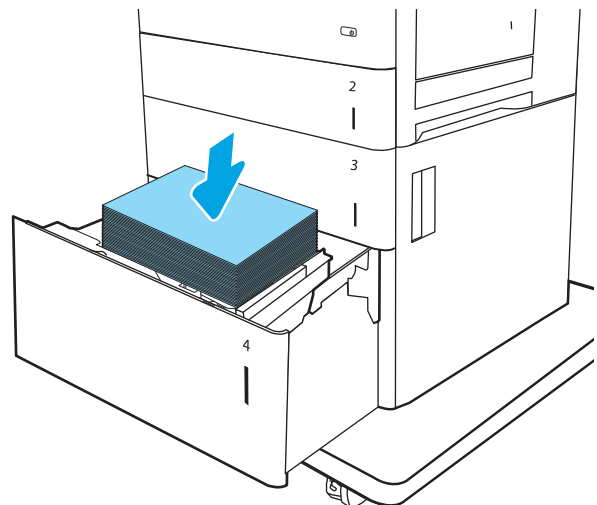
7. Ensure the tray guides are set to the correct paper size loaded into the tray.



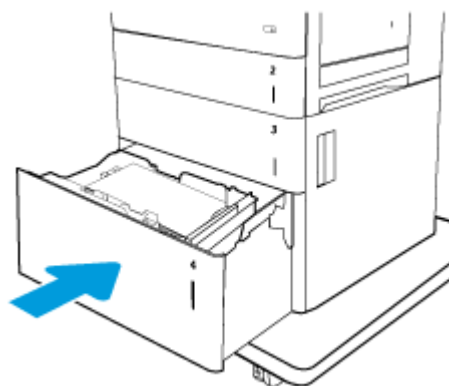
8. Install the tray, and then load full reams of paper into the tray. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



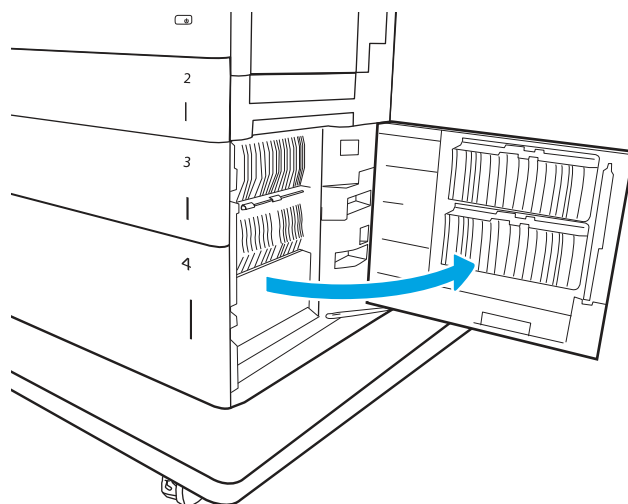
**NOTE:** The tray holds 2,500 sheets of paper. For best results, load full reams of paper. Avoid dividing reams into smaller sections.



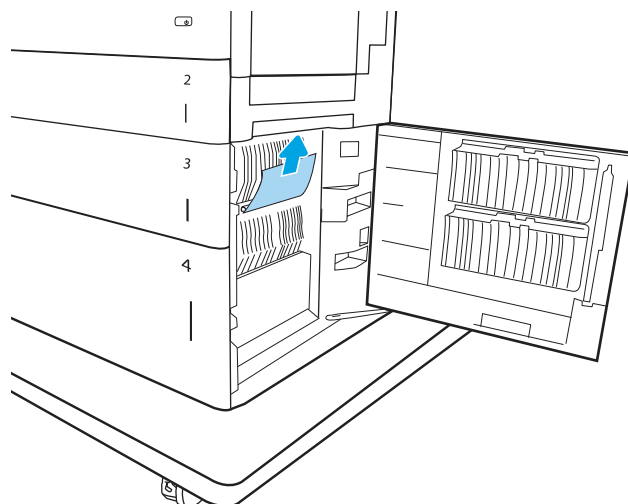
9.. Close the tray.



10.. Open the lower-right door.



11.. Remove any jammed paper.

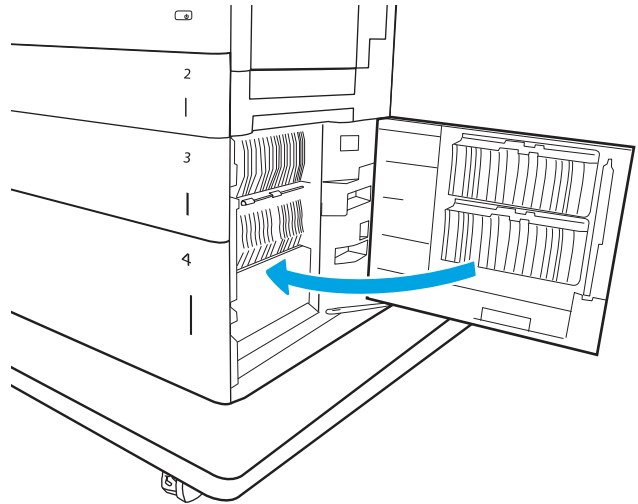




12.. Close the lower-right door.



**NOTE:** If, after clearing the jam, the printer control panel displays a message that there is no paper in the tray or the tray is overfilled, remove the tray and look behind it for any remaining paper.



13.. Clean or replace the pickup, feed, and separation rollers as needed.



**NOTE:** Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth or paper.

Roller kit part number: J8J70-67906

To order parts, go to

<https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

14.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.A5 jam error in tray 5

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

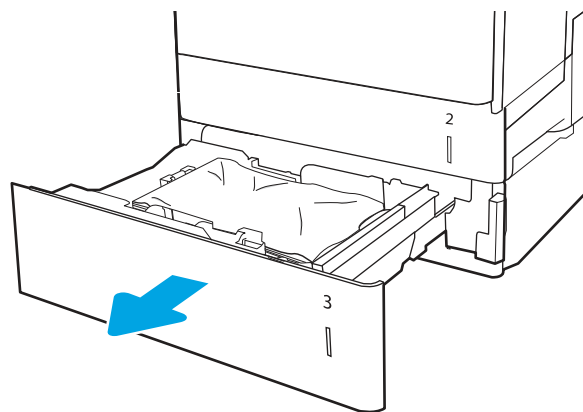
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550-sheet trays. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A5.A5 Jam in tray 5
- 13.A5.D5 Jam in tray 5

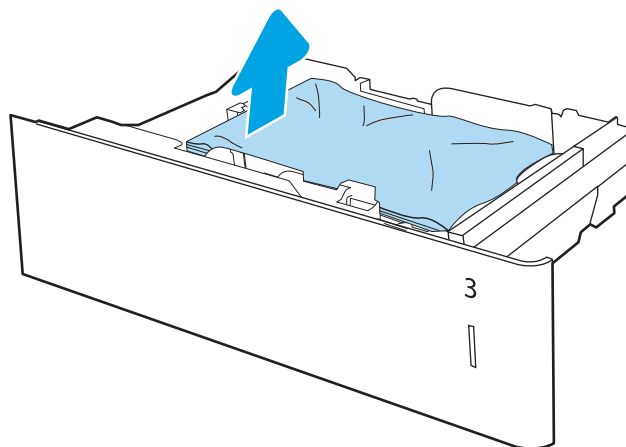
1. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



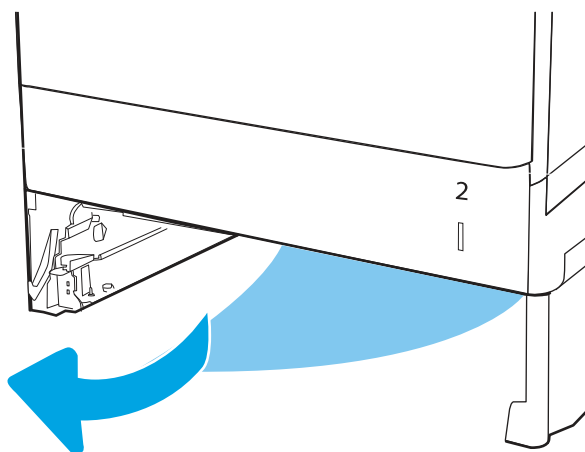
**NOTE:** For trays in the 3x550 sheet feeder all trays are identical. Image shows tray 3.



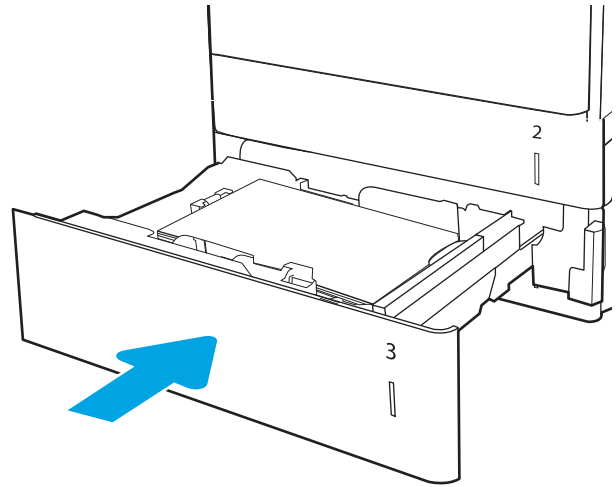
2. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



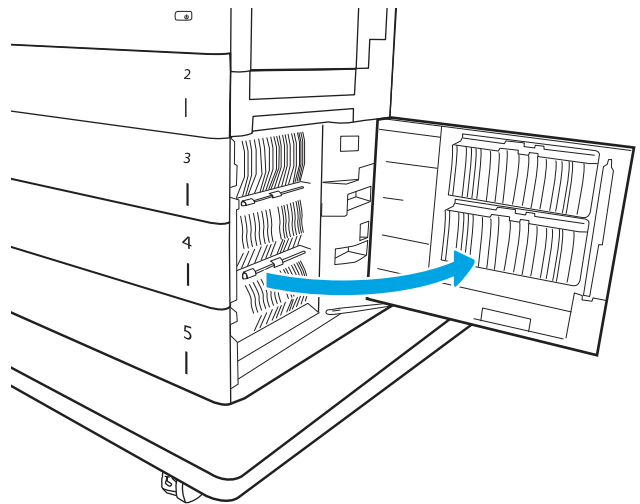
3. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



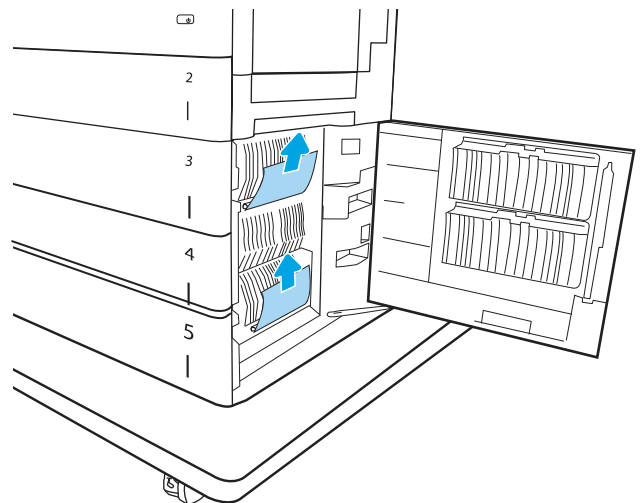
- 4.. Install and close the tray.



- 5.. Open the lower-right door.

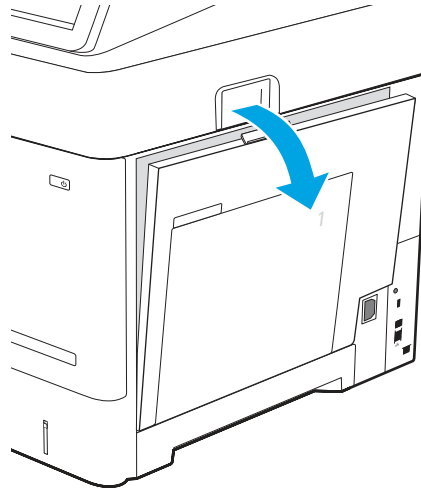


- 6.. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the specified tray.

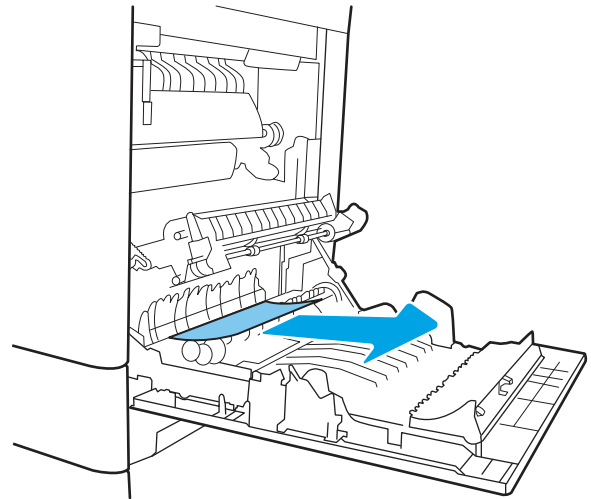


- 7.. Close the lower-right door.

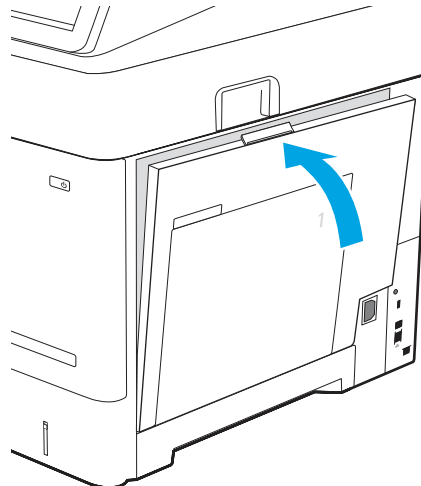
8. Open the right door.



9. Look for and clear any paper present or obstructions in the paper path. Grasp the jammed paper with both hands and pull it straight out to remove it out of the printer.



10. Close the right door to allow the printer to attempt to clear the jam message.

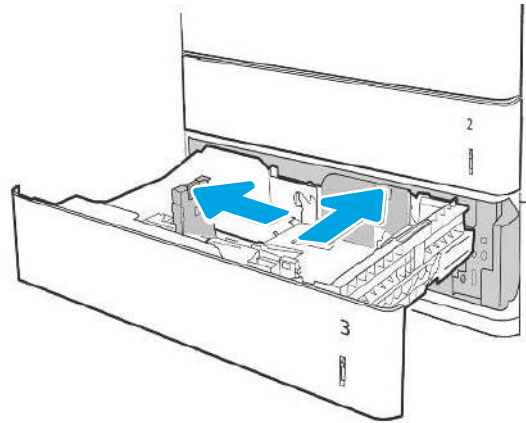


11. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

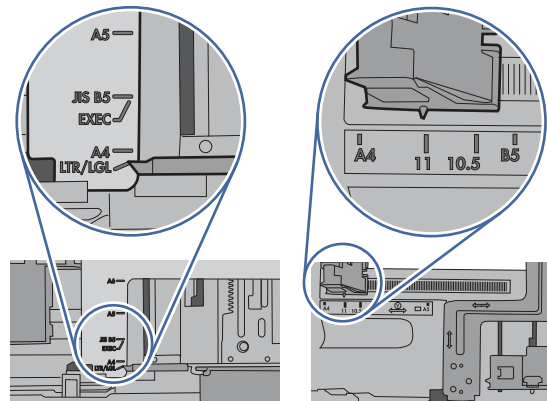
 **NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types](#) c05495229.

12. Ensure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray.

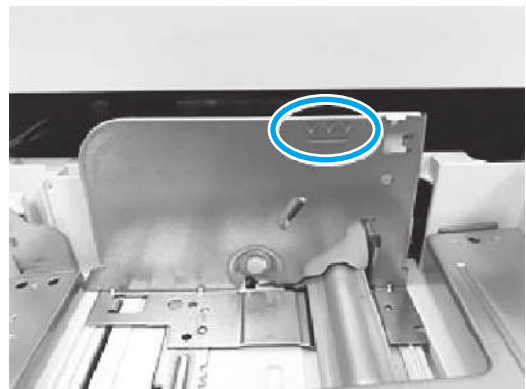
 **NOTE:** For trays in the 3x550 sheet feeder all trays are identical. Image shows tray 3.



Adjust the tray guides.



13. Ensure the paper is not filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles). Remove any excess media.



14. Clean or replace the pickup, feed, and separation rollers as needed.

 **NOTE:** Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth or paper.

Roller kit part number: J8J70-67906

To order parts, go to  
<https://parts.hp.com/hpparts/>

15. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.B2 jam error in right door

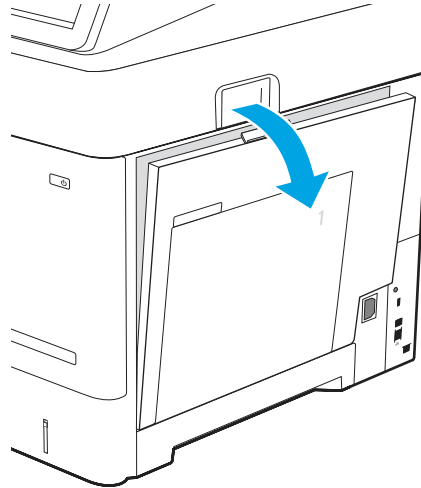
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

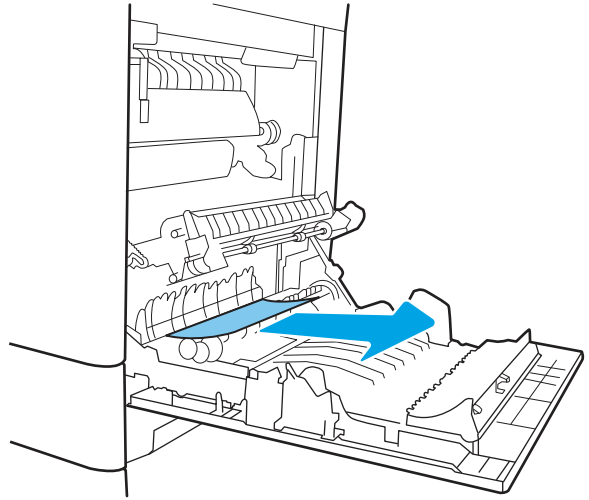
Use the following procedure to check for paper in the lower-right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- **13.B2.yz Jam in right door.**  
**y** = A or D  
**z** = Tray that paper was printing from.
- **13.B2.FF Jam in right door**

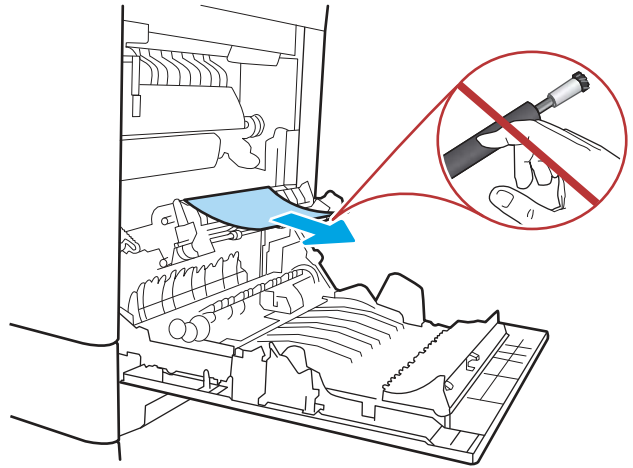
1. Open the right door.



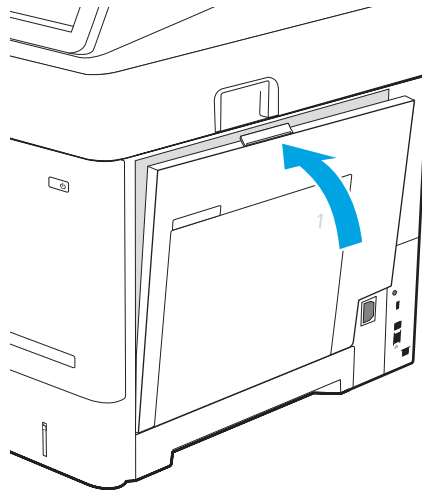
2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



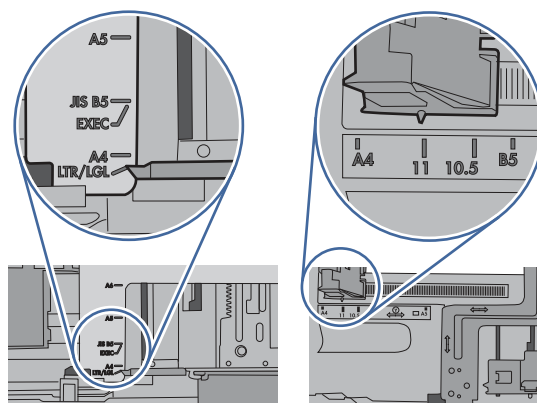
**⚠ CAUTION:** Do not touch the rollers on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.



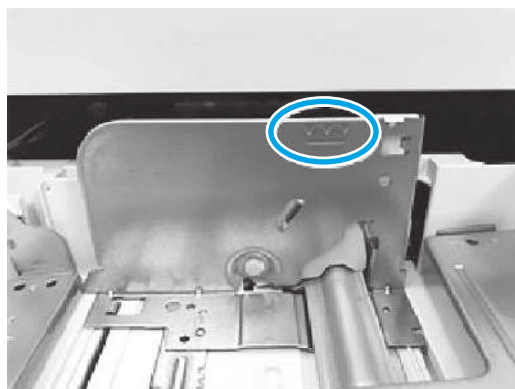
3. Close the lower-right door.



- 4.. Ensure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark or over the tab on the tray.



Adjust the tray guides.



Do not overfill the tray.

- 5.. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.



**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types](#) c05495229.

- 6.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.B4 jam error in right door (fuser)

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations inside the right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- **13.B4.yz Jam in right door.**

y = A or D

z = Tray that paper was printing from.

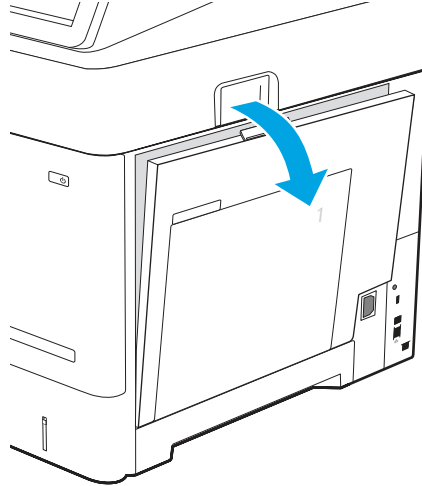


- 13.B4.FF Jam in right door



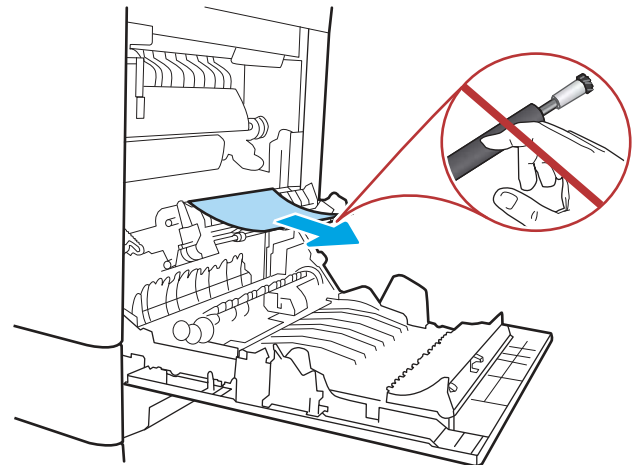
**CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.

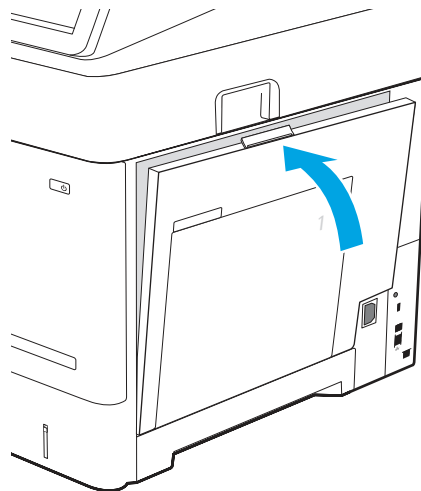


2. Gently remove any jammed paper.

**CAUTION:** Do not touch the rollers on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.



- 3.. Close the lower-right door.



- 4.. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.



**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types c05495229](#).

- 5.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.B9 jam error in right door (fuser)

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

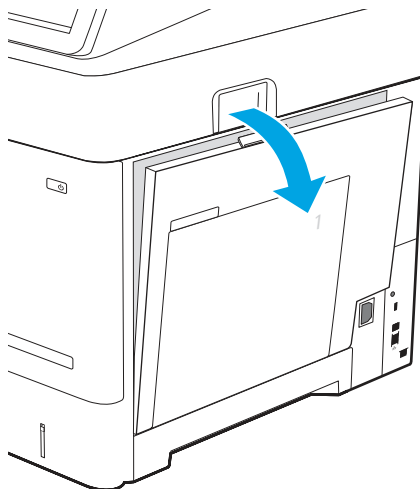
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations inside the right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B9.yz Jam in right door
- 13.FF.yz Jam in right door



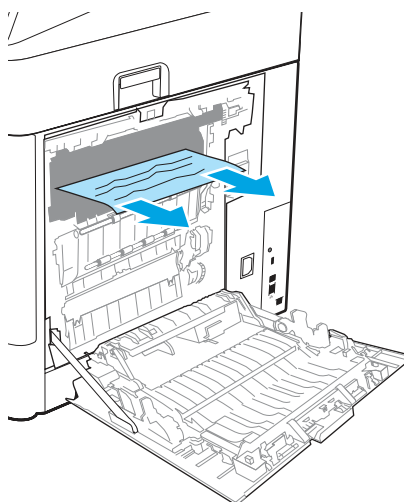
**CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.

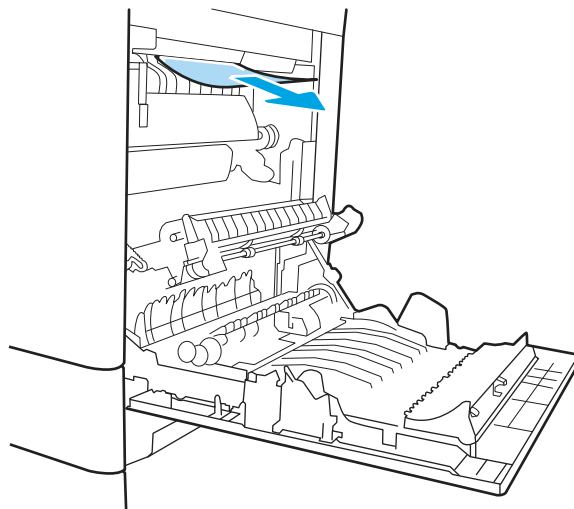


2. If paper is visible entering the bottom of the fuser, gently pull downward to remove it.

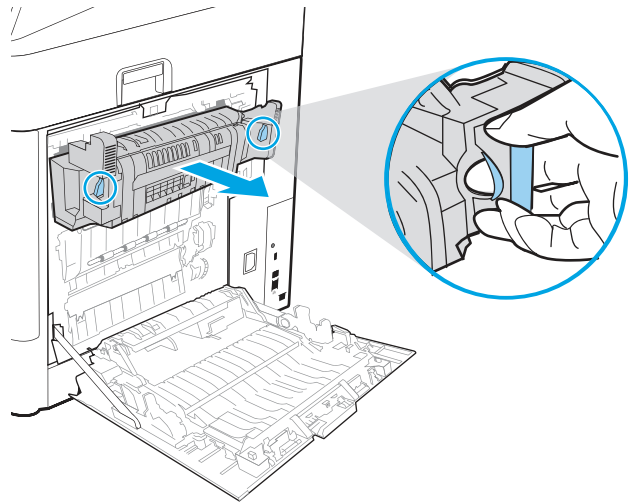
**CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.



3. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper downward to remove it.



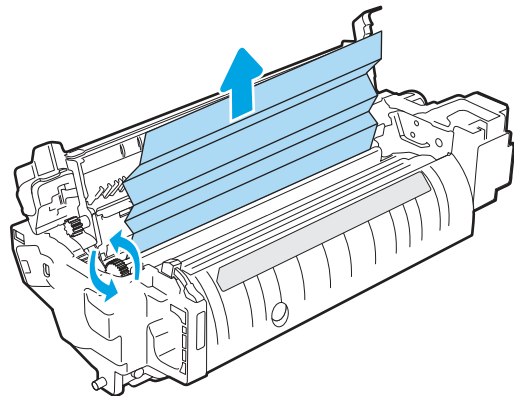
- 4.. Paper could be jammed inside the fuser where it would not be visible. Grasp the fuser handles, lift up slightly, and then pull straight out to remove the fuser.



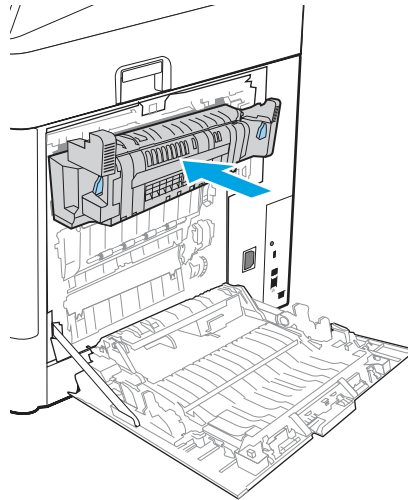
- 5.. Open the jam-access door on the fuser. If paper is jammed inside the fuser, gently pull it straight up to remove it. If the paper tears, remove all paper fragments.



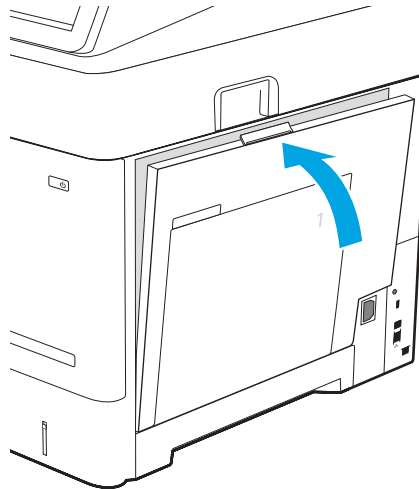
**CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.



- 6.. Close the jam-access door on the fuser, and push the fuser completely into the printer until it clicks into place.



- 7.. Close the lower-right door.



- 8.. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

 **NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types](#) c05495229.

- 9.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

### 13.D3 jam error in right door (duplexer)

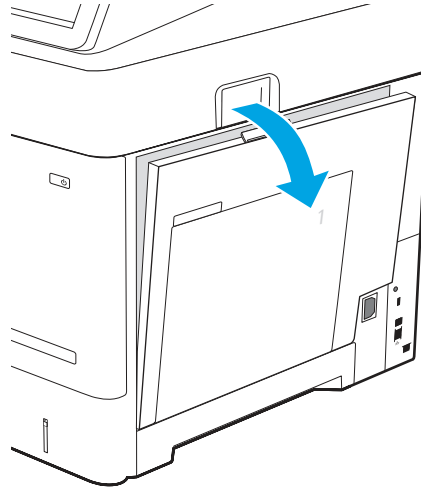
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

#### Recommended action for customers

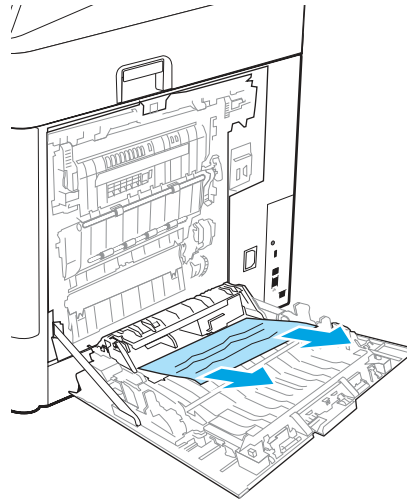
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations inside the right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.D3.yz Jam in right door

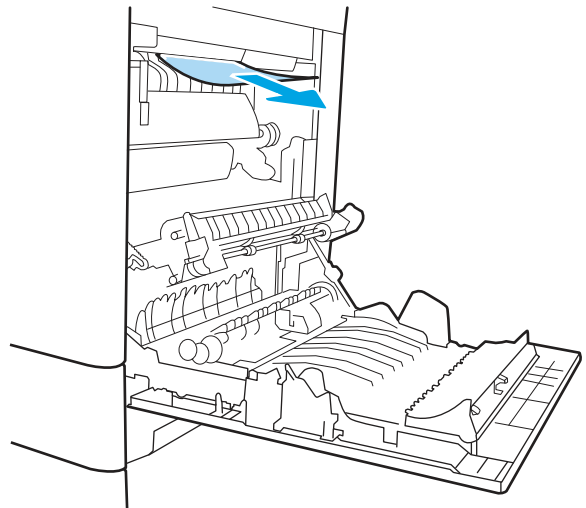
1. Open the right door.



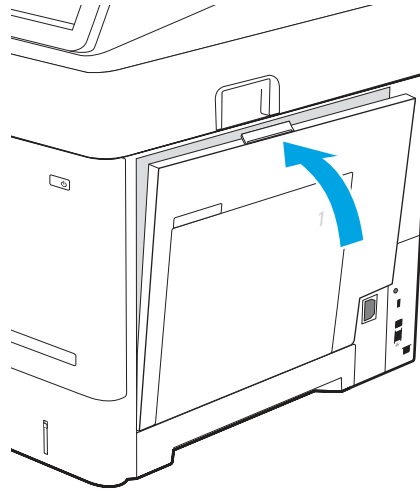
2. If paper is visible entering the bottom of the fuser, gently pull downward to remove it.



3. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper downward to remove it.



4. Close the lower-right door.



5. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.



**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types c05495229](#).

6. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 13.E1 jam error in output bin

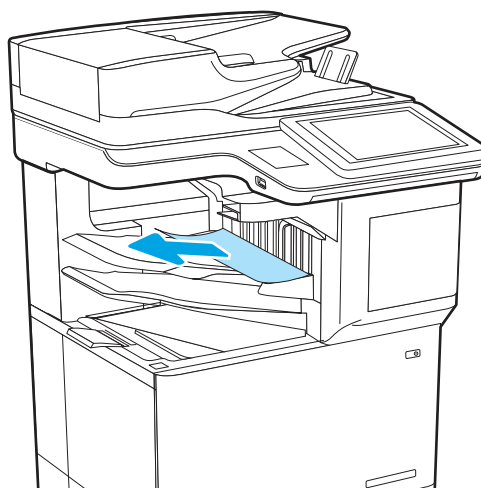
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

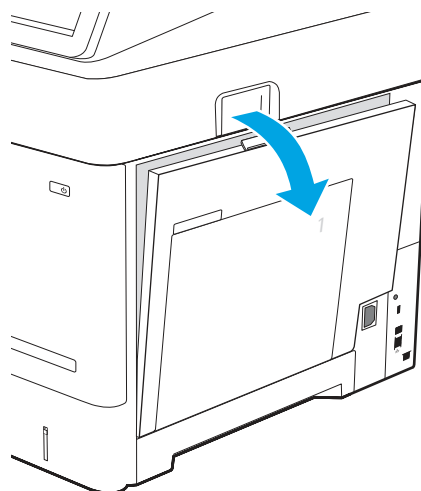
Use the following procedure to clear jams in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.E1.yz Jam in output bin

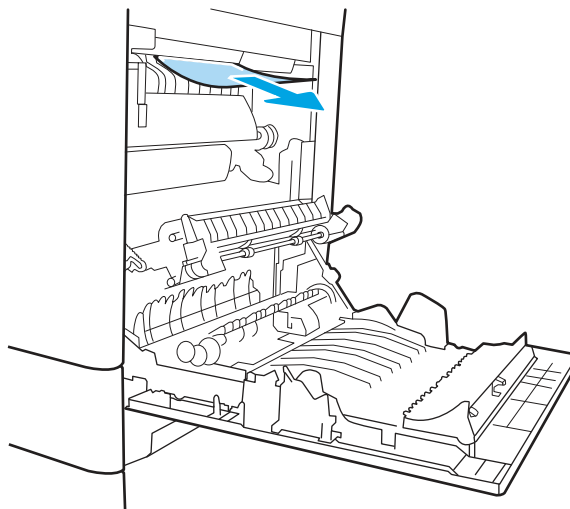
1. If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and gently remove it.



2. Open the right door.

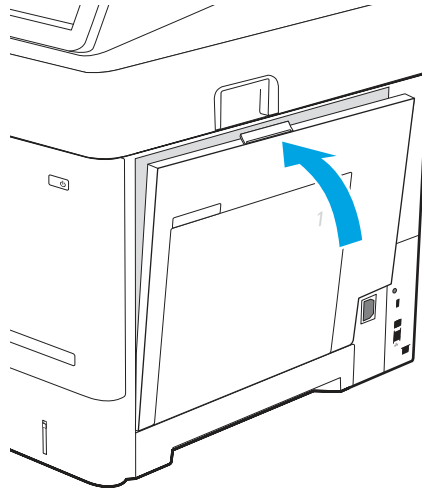


3. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper downward to remove it.





- 4.. Close the lower-right door.



- 5.. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.



**NOTE:** For supported sizes and types view [Supported paper sizes and types c05495229](#).

- 6.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

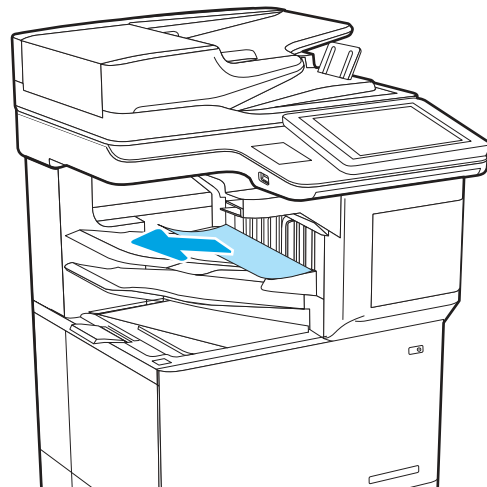
## 13.60 jam error in stapler/stacker

Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

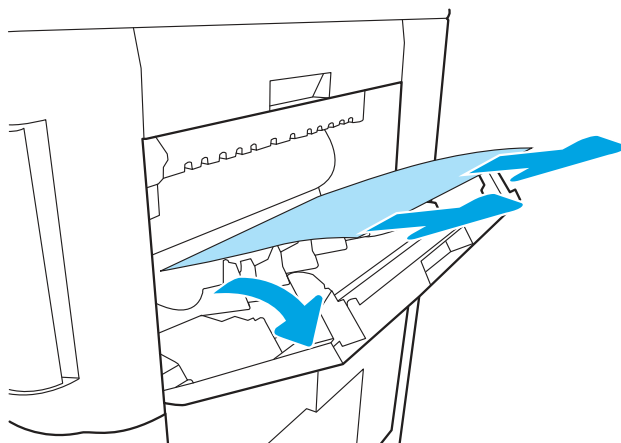
Use the following procedure to check for paper in the 3-bin stapler/stacker. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- **13.60.yz Jam in 3-bin stapler/stacker**

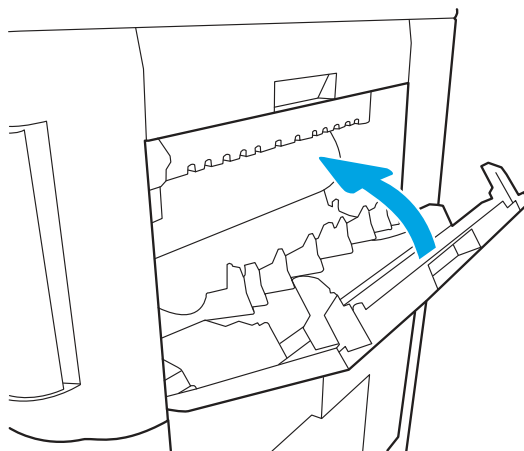
- 1.. Gently remove any jammed paper from the stapler/stacker bins.



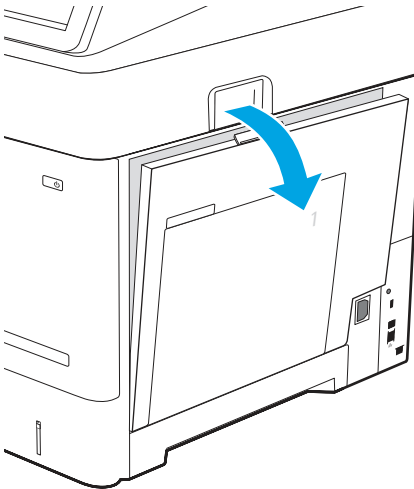
2. Open the stapler/stacker-right upper right door and gently pull paper straight out to remove paper.



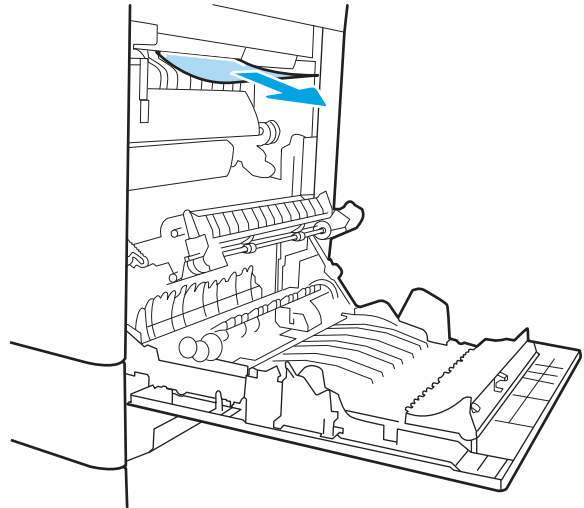
3. Close the stapler/stacker-right upper right door.



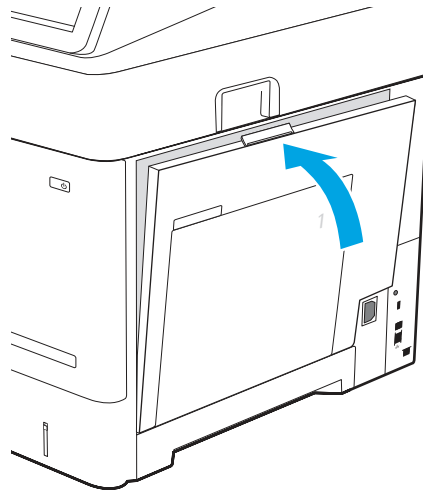
4. Open the right door.



- 5.. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper downward to remove it.



- 6.. Close the lower-right door.



- 7.. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

### 13.83 jam error in stapler/stacker

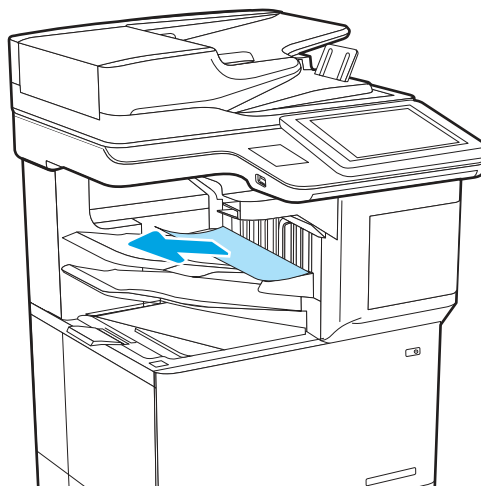
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

#### Recommended action for customers

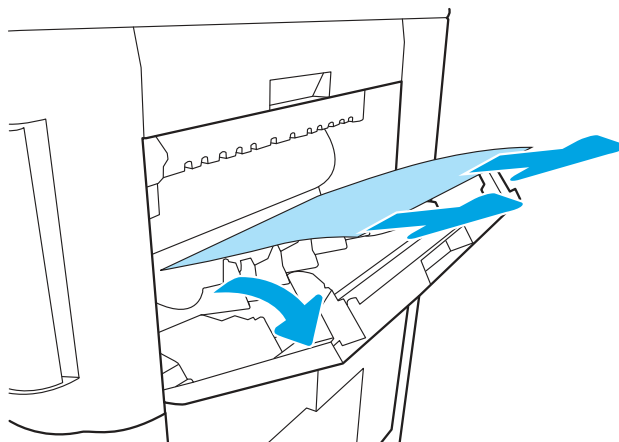
Use the following procedure to check for paper in the 3-bin stapler/stacker. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.83.yz Jam in 3-bin stapler/stacker

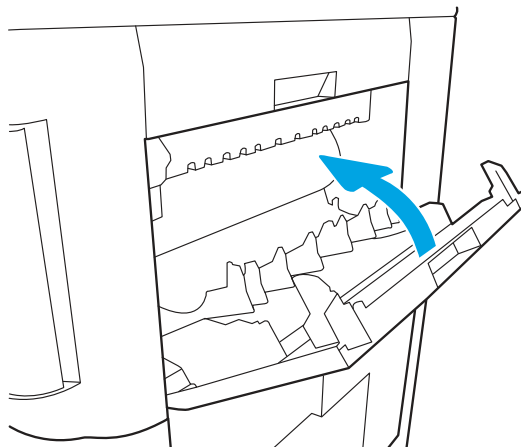
1. Gently remove any jammed paper from the stapler/stacker bins.



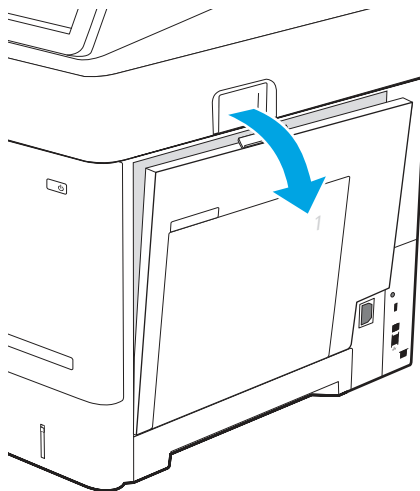
2. Open the stapler/stacker-right upper right door and gently pull paper straight out to remove paper.



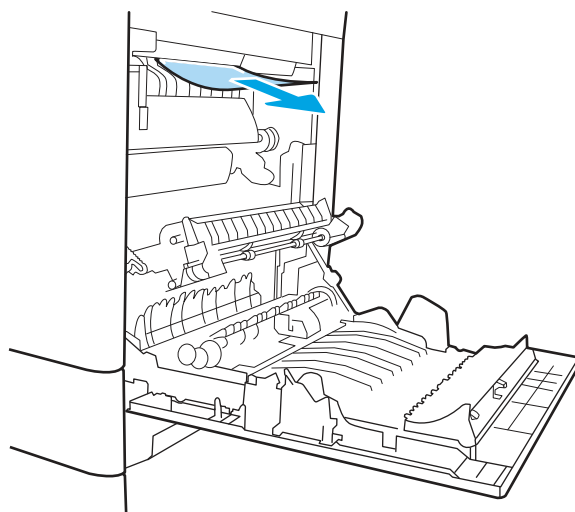
3. Close the stapler/stacker-right upper right door.



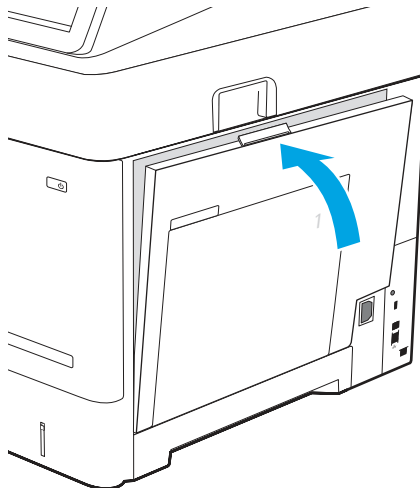
4. Open the right door.



5. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper downward to remove it.



6. Close the lower-right door.



7. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or

contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## 66.80.yz Staple jam/Stapler malfunction

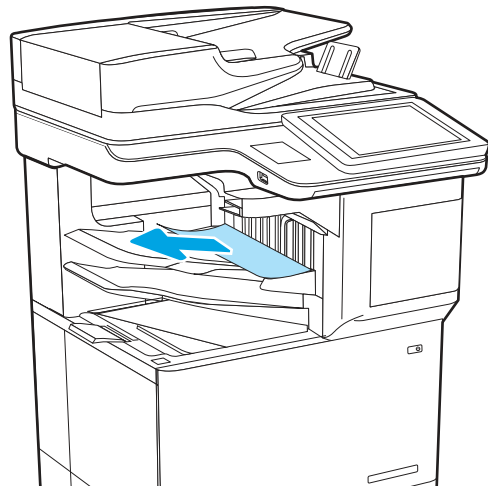
Follow these troubleshooting steps in the order presented.

### Recommended action for customers

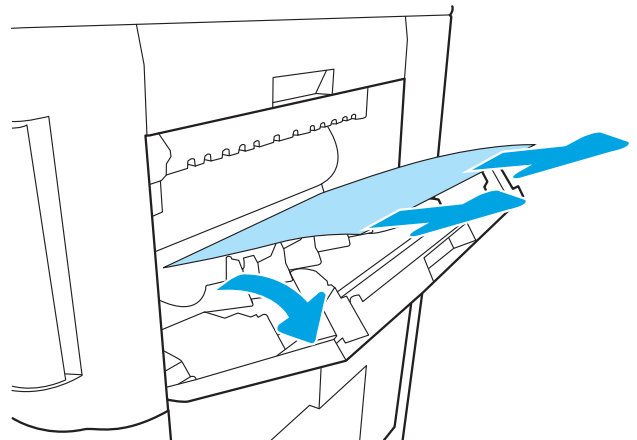
Use the following procedure to check for staple jams in the stapler/stacker. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 66.80.03 Stapler malfunction
- 66.80.19 Stapler malfunction
- 66.80.20 Staple jam
- 66.80.35 Self priming malfunction

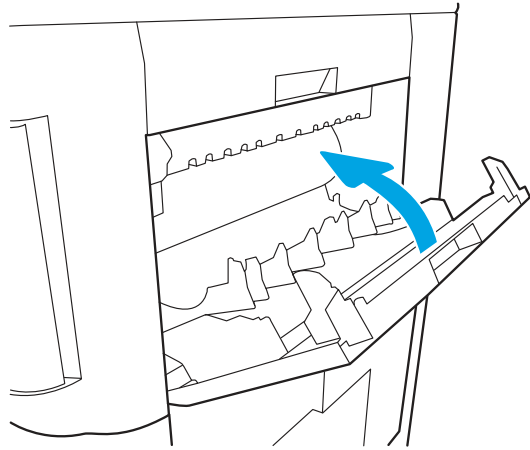
1. Check the output device for any paper jams or obstructions. Clear paper jams and debris as needed.
2. Gently remove any jammed paper from the stapler/stacker bins.



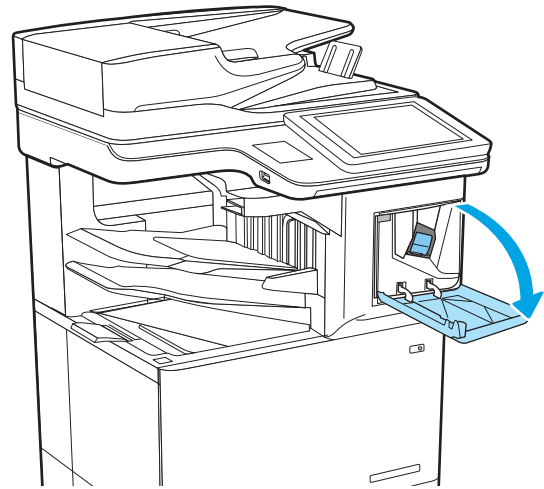
3. Open the stapler/stacker-right upper right door and gently pull paper straight out to remove paper.



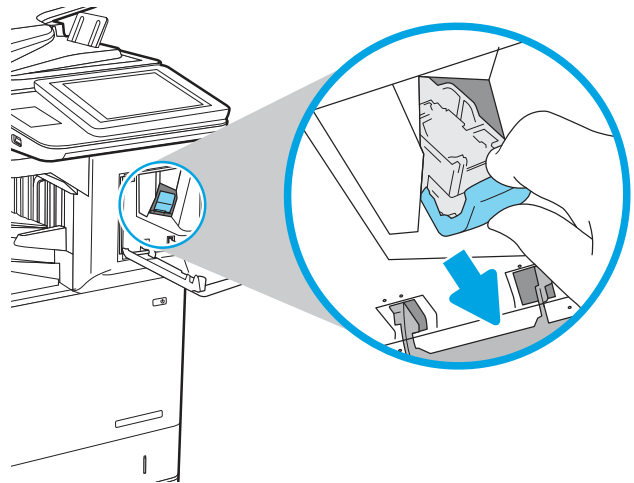
4. Close the stapler/stacker-right upper right door.



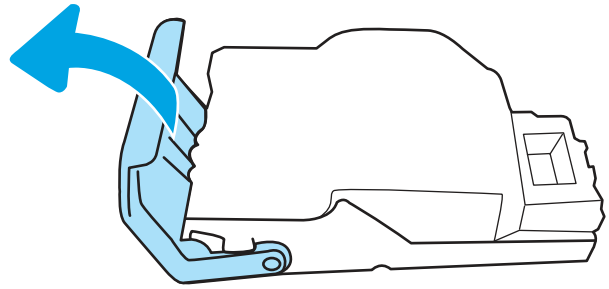
5. Remove the staple cartridge and check for jammed staples. Clear all jammed staples.  
Open the staple cartridge door.



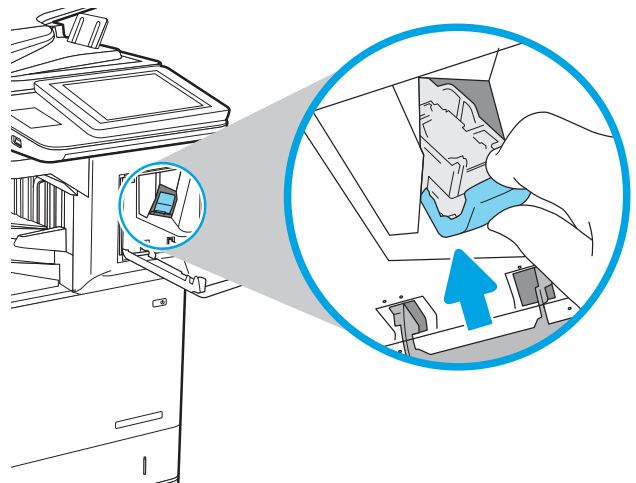
6. Remove the staple cartridge.



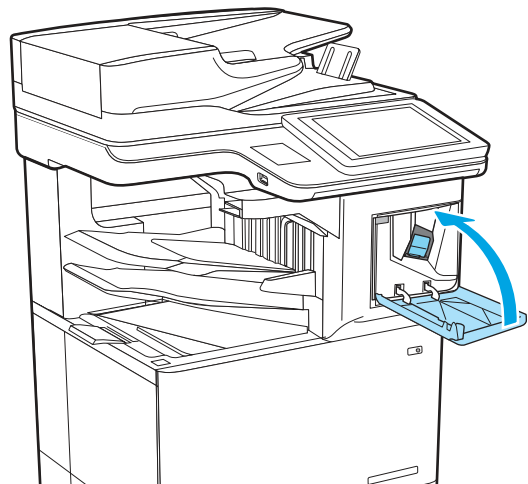
7. Open the staple cartridge and remove any jammed or damaged staples.



8. Close the staple cartridge and reinstall.



9. Close stapler door.



10. Perform a staple job to see if the error has cleared.
11. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or



contact customer support at [www.hp.com/go/contactHP](http://www.hp.com/go/contactHP).

## Resolving mono print quality problems

Use the information below to troubleshoot print-quality and image-quality problems on mono (black and white) HP LaserJet Enterprise printers.

### Introduction

The troubleshooting steps can help resolve the following defects:

- Blank pages
- Black pages
- Curled paper
- Dark or light bands
- Dark or light streaks
- Fuzzy print
- Gray background or dark print
- Light print
- Loose toner
- Missing toner
- Scattered dots of toner
- Skewed images
- Smears
- Streaks

### Troubleshoot print quality

To resolve print-quality issues, try these steps in the order presented.

To troubleshoot specific image defects, see [Troubleshoot image defects](#).

### Update the printer firmware

Try upgrading the printer firmware.

For instructions, go to [www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support).

### Print from a different software program

Try printing from a different software program.

If the page prints correctly, the problem is with the software program from which you were printing.

## Check the paper-type setting for the print job

Check the paper type setting when printing from a software program and the printed pages have smears, fuzzy or dark print, curled paper, scattered dots of toner, loose toner, or small areas of missing toner.

### Check the paper type setting on the control panel

Check the paper type setting on the printer control panel, and change the setting as needed.

1. Open and close the paper tray.
2. Follow the control panel prompts to confirm or modify the paper type and size settings for the tray.
3. Make sure the paper loaded meets specifications.
4. Adjust the humidity and resistance setting on the control panel to match the environment.
  - a. Open the following menus:
    - i. Settings
    - ii. Copy/Print
    - iii. Print quality
    - iv. Adjust paper type
  - b. Select the paper type that matches the type loaded in the tray.
  - c. Use the arrows to increase or decrease the humidity and resistance setting.
5. Make sure the driver settings match the control panel settings.



---

**NOTE:** The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

---

### Check the paper type setting (Windows)

Check the paper type setting for Windows, and change the setting as needed.



---

**NOTE:** The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

---

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button.
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. From the **Paper Type** drop-down list, click the **More...** option.
5. Expand the list of **Type is:** options.
6. Expand the category of paper types that best describes your paper.
7. Select the option for the type of paper you are using, and click the **OK** button.
8. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **OK** button to print the job.

### Check the paper type setting (macOS)

Check the paper type setting for macOS, and change the setting as needed.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. In the **Printer** menu, select the printer.
3. By default, the print driver displays the **Copies & Pages** menu. Open the menus drop-down list, and then click the **Finishing** menu.
4. Select a type from the **Media Type** drop-down list.
5. Click the **Print** button.

### Check toner-cartridge status

Follow these steps to check the estimated life remaining in the toner cartridges and if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

#### Step one: Print the Supplies Status Page

The supplies status page indicates the cartridge status.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Reports** menu.
2. Select the **Configuration/Status Pages** menu.
3. Select **Supplies Status Page**, and then select **Print** to print the page.

#### Step two: Check supplies status

Check the supplies status report as follows.

1. Look at the supplies status report to check the percent of life remaining for the toner cartridges and, if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

Print quality problems can occur when using a toner cartridge that is at its estimated end of life. The supplies status page indicates when a supply level is very low. After an HP supply has reached the very low threshold, HP's premium protection warranty on that supply has ended.

The toner cartridge does not need to be replaced now unless the print quality is no longer acceptable. Consider having a replacement available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable.

If you determine that you need to replace a toner cartridge or other replaceable maintenance parts, the supplies status page lists the genuine HP part numbers.

2. Check to see if you are using a genuine HP cartridge.

A genuine HP toner cartridge has the word "HP" on it, or has the HP logo on it. For more information on identifying HP cartridges go to [www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies](http://www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies).

### Print a cleaning page

During the printing process paper, toner, and dust particles can accumulate inside the printer and can cause print-quality issues such as toner specks or spatter, smears, streaks, lines, or repeating marks.

Follow these steps to clean the printer paper path:

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Support Tools** menu.

2. Select the following menus:
  - a. [Maintenance](#)
  - b. [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
  - c. [Cleaning Page](#)
3. Select [Print](#) to print the page.

A **Cleaning...** message displays on the printer control panel. The cleaning process takes a few minutes to complete. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.

## Visually inspect the toner cartridge or cartridges

Follow these steps to inspect each toner cartridge:

1. Remove the toner cartridge from the printer, and verify that the sealing tape has been removed.
2. Check the memory chip for damage.
3. Examine the surface of the green imaging drum.

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not touch the imaging drum. Fingerprints on the imaging drum can cause print-quality problems.

---

4. If you see any scratches, fingerprints, or other damage on the imaging drum, replace the toner cartridge.
5. Reinstall the toner cartridge and print a few pages to see if the problem has resolved.

## Check paper and the printing environment

Use the following information to check the paper selection and the printing environment.

### Step one: Use paper that meets HP specifications

Some print-quality problems arise from using paper that does not meet HP specifications.

- Always use a paper type and weight that this printer supports.
- Use paper that is of good quality and free of cuts, nicks, tears, spots, loose particles, dust, wrinkles, voids, staples, and curled or bent edges.
- Use paper that has not been previously printed on.
- Use paper that does not contain metallic material, such as glitter.
- Use paper that is designed for use in laser printers. Do not use paper that is designed only for use in Inkjet printers.
- Use paper that is not too rough. Using smoother paper generally results in better print quality.

### Step two: Check the environment

The environment can directly affect print quality and is a common cause of print-quality or paper-feeding issues. Try the following solutions:

- Move the printer away from drafty locations, such as open windows or doors, or air-conditioning vents.
- Make sure the printer is not exposed to temperatures or humidity outside of printer specifications.
- Do not place the printer in a confined space, such as a cabinet.
- Place the printer on a sturdy, level surface.
- Remove anything that is blocking the vents on the printer. The printer requires good air flow on all sides, including the top.
- Protect the printer from airborne debris, dust, steam, grease, or other elements that can leave residue inside the printer.

### Step three: Set the individual tray alignment

Follow these steps when text or images are not centered or aligned correctly on the printed page when printing from specific trays.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Settings** menu.
2. Select the following menus:
  - a. **Copy/Print or Print**
  - b. **Print Quality**
  - c. **Image Registration**
3. Select **Tray**, and then select the tray to adjust.
4. Select **Print Test Page**, and then follow the instructions on the printed pages.
5. Select **Print Test Page** again to verify the results, and then make further adjustments if necessary.
6. Select **Done** to save the new settings.

### Try a different print driver

Try a different print driver when printing from a software program and the printed pages have unexpected lines in graphics, missing text, missing graphics, incorrect formatting, or substituted fonts.

Download any of the following drivers from the HP Web site: [www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM631MFP), [www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM632MFP), or [www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP](http://www.hp.com/support/ljM633MFP).

**Table 9-3 Print drivers**

| Driver          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HP PCL6 driver  | If available, this printer-specific print driver supports older operating systems like Windows XP and Windows Vista. For a list of supported operating systems, go to <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/support">www.hp.com/go/support</a> . |
| HP PCL 6 driver | This printer-specific print driver supports Windows 7 and newer operating systems that support version 3 drivers. For a list of supported operating systems, go to <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/support">www.hp.com/go/support</a> .    |
| HP PCL-6 driver | This product-specific print driver supports Windows 8 and newer operating systems that support version 4 drivers. For a list of supported operating systems, go to <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/support">www.hp.com/go/support</a> .    |

**Table 9-3** Print drivers (continued)

| Driver           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HP UPD PS driver | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recommended for printing with Adobe software programs or with other highly graphics-intensive software programs</li> <li>Provides support for printing from Postscript emulation needs, or for Postscript flash font support</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                         |
| HP UPD PCL 6     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recommended for printing in all Windows environments</li> <li>Provides the overall best speed, print quality, and printer feature support for most users</li> <li>Developed to align with Windows Graphic Device Interface (GDI) for best speed in Windows environments</li> <li>Might not be fully compatible with third-party and custom software programs that are based on PCL 5</li> </ul> |

## Check the EconoMode settings

HP does not recommend the full-time use of EconoMode. If EconoMode is used full-time, the toner supply might outlast the mechanical parts in the toner cartridge. If print quality begins to degrade and is no longer acceptable, consider replacing the toner cartridge.



**NOTE:** This feature is available with the PCL 6 print driver for Windows. If you are not using that driver, you can enable the feature by using the HP Embedded Web Server.

Follow these steps if the entire page is too dark or too light.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button.
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab, and locate the **Print Quality** area.
4. If the entire page is too dark, use these settings:
  - Select the **600 dpi** option, if available.
  - Select the **EconoMode** check box to enable it.

If the entire page is too light, use these settings:

- Select the **FastRes 1200** option, if available.
  - Clear the **EconoMode** check box to disable it.
5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box. In the **Print** dialog, click the **OK** button to print the job.

## Adjust print density

Complete the following steps to adjust the print density.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the **Settings** menu.
2. Open the following menus:

- a. [Copy/Print](#) or [Print](#)
  - b. [Print Quality](#)
  - c. [Toner Density](#)
3. Move the slider toward either [Less](#) or [More](#) to the desired density setting.

## Troubleshoot image defects

Review examples of image defects and steps to resolve these defects.

**Table 9-4** Image defects table quick reference

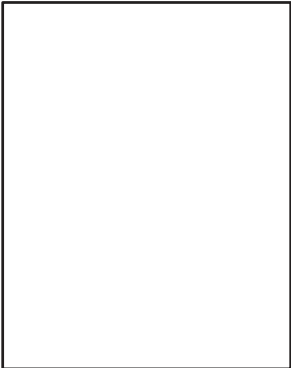
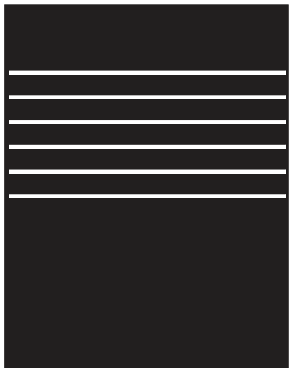
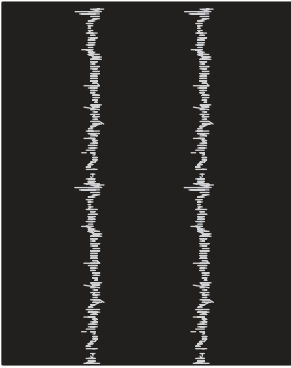
| Sample                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                               | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Table 9-11 Light print on page 211</a><br> | <a href="#">Table 9-9 Gray background or dark print on page 210</a><br> | <a href="#">Table 9-7 Blank page – No print on page 209</a><br> |
| <a href="#">Table 9-6 Black page on page 208</a><br>  | <a href="#">Table 9-5 Banding defects on page 208</a><br>              | <a href="#">Table 9-13 Streak defects on page 212</a><br>      |

Table 9-4 Image defects table quick reference (continued)

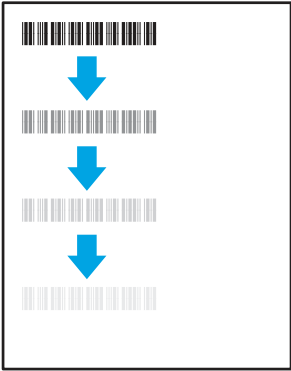
| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                                       | Possible solutions                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Table 9-8 Fixing/fuser defects on page 209</a>                        | <a href="#">Table 9-10 Image placement defects on page 210</a>                    | <a href="#">Table 9-12 Output defects on page 211</a>                               |
|  |  |  |

Image defects, no matter the cause, can often be resolved using the same steps. Use the following steps as a starting point for solving image defect issues.

1. Reprint the document. Print quality defects can be intermittent in nature or can go away completely with continued printing.
2. Check the condition of the cartridge or cartridges. If a cartridge is in a **Very Low** state (it has passed the rated life), replace the cartridge.
3. Make sure that the driver and tray print mode settings match the media that is loaded in the tray. Try using a different ream of media or a different tray. Try using a different print mode.
4. Make sure that the printer is within the supported operating temperature/humidity range.
5. Make sure that the paper type, size, and weight are supported by the printer. See [support.hp.com](http://support.hp.com) for a list of the supported paper sizes and types for the printer.

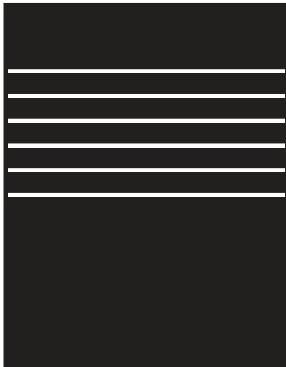


**NOTE:** The term “fusing” refers to the part of the printing process where toner is affixed to paper.

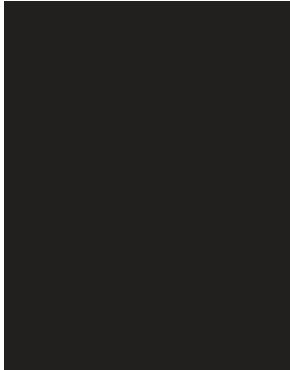
The following examples depict letter-size paper that has passed through the printer short edge first.



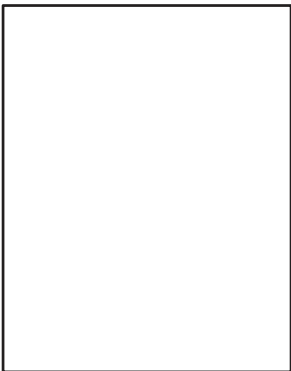
**Table 9-5 Banding defects**

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Dark or light lines which repeat down the length of the page, and are wide-pitch and/or impulse bands. They might be sharp or soft in nature. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Try printing from another tray.</li> <li>3. Replace the cartridge.</li> <li>4. Use a different paper type.</li> <li>5. <b>Enterprise models only:</b> From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the <a href="#">Adjust Paper Types</a> menu, and then choose a print mode that is designed for a slightly heavier media than what you are using. This slows the print speed and might improve the print quality.</li> <li>6. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

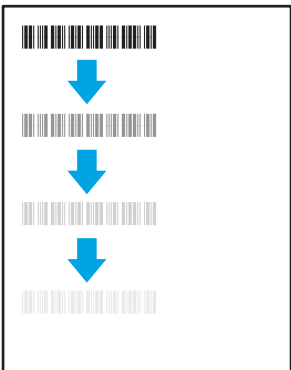
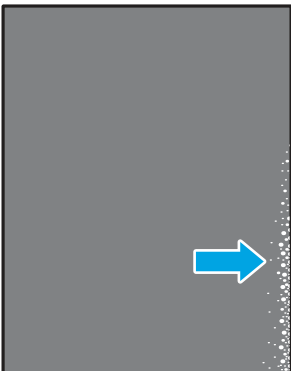
**Table 9-6 Black page**

| Sample                                                                             | Description                       | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The entire printed page is black. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Visually inspect the cartridge to check for damage.</li> <li>2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly.</li> <li>3. Replace the cartridge.</li> <li>4. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

**Table 9-7** Blank page – No print

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                   | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The page is completely blank and contains no printed content. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure that the cartridges are genuine HP cartridges.</li> <li>2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly.</li> <li>3. Print with a different cartridge.</li> <li>4. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter paper type.</li> <li>5. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

**Table 9-8** Fixing/fuser defects

| Sample                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Slight shadows or offsets of the image are repeated down the page. The repeated image might fade with each recurrence.                                                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter weight paper type.</li> <li>3. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  | Toner rubs off along either edge of the page. This defect is more common at the edges of high-coverage jobs, and on light media types, but can occur anywhere on the page. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a heavier paper type.</li> <li>3. <b>Enterprise models only:</b> From the printer control panel, go to the <a href="#">Edge-to-Edge</a> menu and then select <a href="#">Normal</a>. Reprint the document.</li> <li>4. <b>Enterprise models only:</b> From the printer control panel, select <a href="#">Auto Include Margins</a> and then reprint the document.</li> <li>5. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

**Table 9-9** Gray background or dark print

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                                     | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The image or text is darker than expected and/or the background is gray.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure that the paper in the trays has not already been run through the printer.</li> <li>2. Use a different paper type.</li> <li>3. Reprint the document.</li> <li>4. <b>Mono models only:</b> From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the <a href="#">Adjust Toner Density</a> menu, and then adjust the toner density to a lower level.</li> <li>5. Make sure that the printer is within the supported operating temperature and humidity range.</li> <li>6. Replace the cartridge.</li> <li>7. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

**Table 9-10** Image placement defects

| Sample                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                             | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The image is not centered, or is skewed on the page. The defect occurs when the paper is not positioned properly as it is pulled from the tray and moves through the paper path.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Remove the paper and then reload the tray. Make sure that all the paper edges are even on all sides.</li> <li>3. Make sure that the top of the paper stack is below the tray-full indicator. Do not overfill the tray.</li> <li>4. Make sure that the paper guides are adjusted to the correct size for the paper. Do not adjust the paper guides tightly against the paper stack. Adjust them to the indentations or markings in the tray.</li> <li>5. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

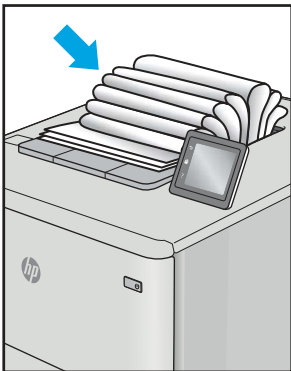
**Table 9-11** Light print

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                               | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The printed content is light or faded on the entire page. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>.</li> <li>3. <b>Mono models only:</b> Make sure that the EconoMode setting is disabled, both at the printer control panel and in the print driver.</li> <li>4. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly.</li> <li>5. Print a Supplies Status Page and check the life and usage of the cartridge.</li> <li>6. Replace the cartridge.</li> <li>7. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

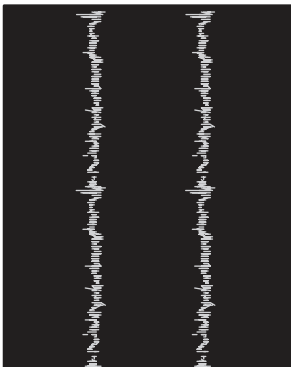
**Table 9-12** Output defects

| Sample                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Printed pages have curled edges. The curled edge can be along the short or long side of the paper. Two types of curl are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Positive curl:</b> The paper curls toward the printed side. The defect occurs in dry environments or when printing high-coverage pages.</li> <li>• <b>Negative curl:</b> The paper curls away from the printed side. The defect occurs in high-humidity environments or when printing low-coverage pages.</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. <b>Positive curl:</b> From the printer control panel, select a heavier paper type. The heavier paper type creates a higher temperature for printing.<br/><br/><b>Negative curl:</b> From the printer control panel, select a lighter paper type. The lighter paper type creates a lower temperature for printing. Try storing the paper in a dry environment prior to use, or use freshly opened paper.</li> <li>3. Print in duplex mode.</li> <li>4. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

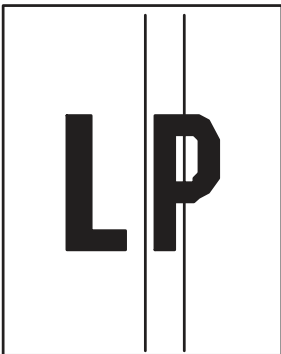
**Table 9-12** Output defects (continued)

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The paper does not stack well in the output tray. The stack might be uneven, skewed, or the pages might be pushed out of the tray and onto the floor. Any of the following conditions can cause this defect:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extreme paper curl</li> <li>• The paper in the tray is wrinkled or deformed</li> <li>• The paper is a non-standard paper type, such as envelopes</li> <li>• The output tray is too full</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Extend the output bin extension.</li> <li>3. If the defect is caused by extreme paper curl, refer to the troubleshooting steps for "Output curl."</li> <li>4. Use a different paper type.</li> <li>5. Use freshly opened paper.</li> <li>6. Remove the paper from the output tray before the tray gets too full.</li> <li>7. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

**Table 9-13** Streak defects

| Sample                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                         | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Light vertical streaks that usually span the length of the page. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>.</li> <li>3. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Both light and dark vertical streaks can occur when the printing environment is outside the specified range for temperature or humidity. Refer to your printer's environmental specifications for allowable temperature and humidity levels.</p> |

**Table 9-13 Streak defects (continued)**

| Sample                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                        | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Dark vertical lines which occur down the length of the page. The defect might occur anywhere on the page, in areas of fill or in sections with no printed content. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reprint the document.</li> <li>2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>.</li> <li>3. Print a cleaning page.</li> <li>4. Check the toner level in the cartridge.</li> <li>5. If the issue persists, go to <a href="http://support.hp.com">support.hp.com</a>.</li> </ol> |

## Improve copy image quality

If the printer is having copy quality problems, try the following solutions in the order presented to resolve the issue.

Try these few simple steps first:

- Use the flatbed scanner rather than the document feeder.
- Use high-quality originals.
- When using the document feeder, load the original document into the feeder correctly, using the paper guides, to avoid unclear or skewed images.

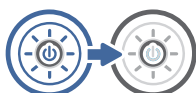
If the problem still exists, try these additional solutions. If they do not fix the problem, see “Improve print quality” for further solutions.

## Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

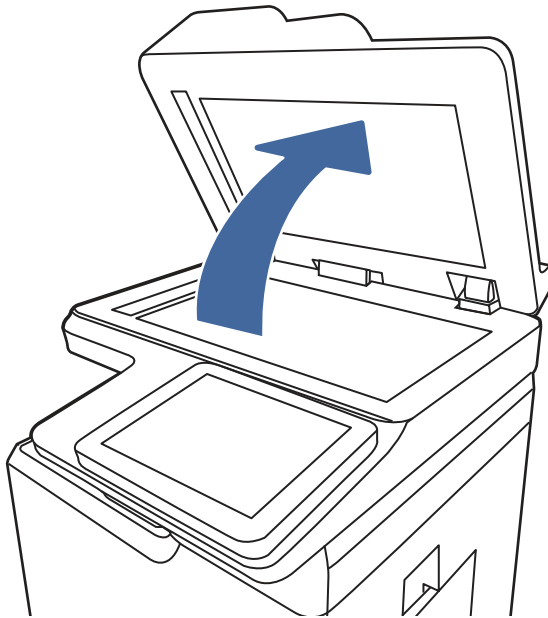
Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

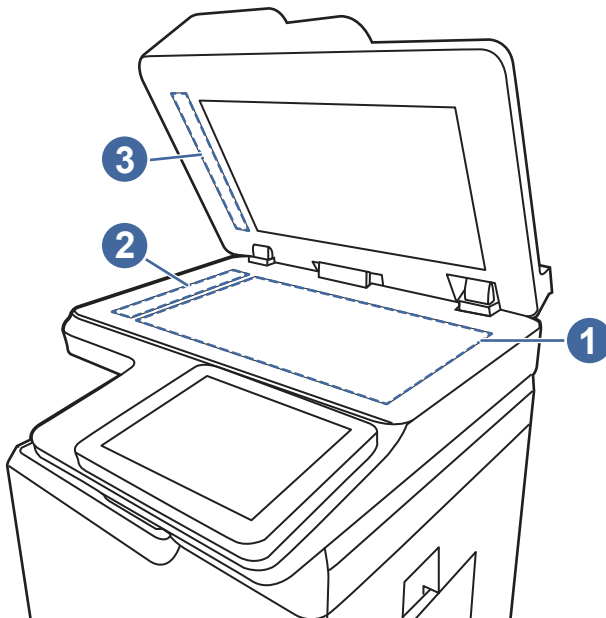
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



**CAUTION:** Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

**NOTE:** If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.

5. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



## Calibrate the scanner

Calibration is a process that optimizes scan quality.



**NOTE:** When using the document feeder, make sure to adjust the guides in the input tray so they are against the original document.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Support Tools](#) application, and then select the [Support Tools](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Maintenance](#)
  - b. [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
  - c. [Calibrate Scanner](#)
3. Touch the [Start](#) button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
4. Wait while the printer calibrates, and then try copying again.

## Check the paper settings

Follow these steps if copied pages have smears, fuzzy or dark print, curled paper, or areas where pigment has dropped out.

### Check the paper selection options

Use the following steps to check the paper selection options.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Copy](#) application, and then select the [Copy](#) icon.
2. Select [Options](#), and then scroll to and select [Paper Selection](#).
3. Select [Paper size](#), and then select one of the predefined options.
4. Select [Paper type](#), and then select one of the predefined options.
5. Select [Paper tray](#), and then select one of the predefined options.
6. Select [Done](#) to save the paper selection options.

## Check the image-adjustment settings

Adjust the settings in the [Copy](#) menu to optimize image quality.

- **Sharpness:** Clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photos appear smoother.
- **Darkness:** Increase or decrease the amount of white and black used in colors in scanned images.



- **Contrast:** Increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and the darkest color on the page.
  - **Background Cleanup:** Remove faint colors from the background of scanned images. For example, if the original document is printed on colored paper, use this feature to lighten the background without affecting the darkness of the image.
  - **Automatic Tone:** Available for Flow printers only. The printer automatically adjusts the **Darkness**, **Contrast**, and **Background Cleanup** settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Copy** application, and then select the **Copy** icon.
  2. Select **Options**, and then scroll to and select **Image Adjustment**.
  3. Adjust the sliders to set the levels, and select **Done**.
  4. Select **Copy** to start the copy job.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

## Optimize copy quality for text or pictures

Optimize the copy job for the type of image being copied: text, graphics, or photos.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Copy** application, and then select the **Copy** icon.
2. Select **Options**, and then select **Optimize Text/Picture**.
3. Select one of the predefined options.
4. Select **Copy** to start the copy job.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

## Edge-to-edge copying

Use this feature to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Copy** application, and then select the **Copy** icon.
2. Select **Options**, and then select **Edge-To-Edge**.
3. Select the **Edge-To-Edge output** option if the original document is printed close to the paper edges.
4. Select **Copy** to start the copy job.

## Improve scan image quality

Try the following basic solutions to improve scanned image quality.

- Use the flatbed scanner rather than the document feeder.

- Use high-quality originals.
- When using the document feeder, load the original document into the feeder correctly, using the paper guides, to avoid unclear or skewed images.

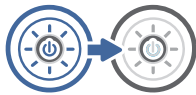
If the problem still exists, try these additional solutions. If they do not fix the problem, see “Improve print quality” for further solutions.

## Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

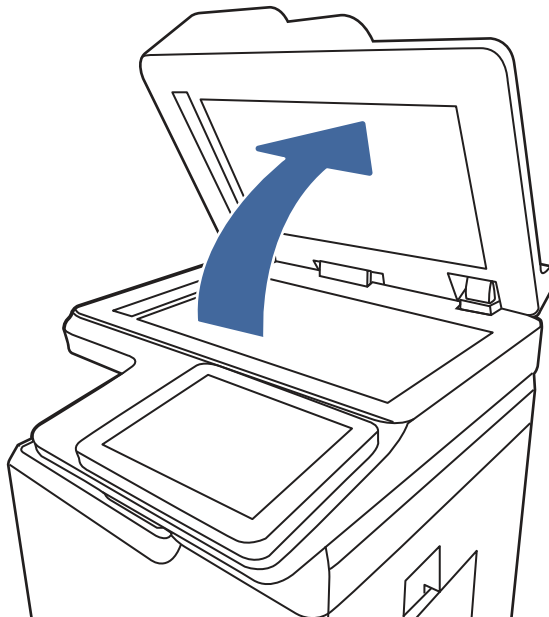
Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

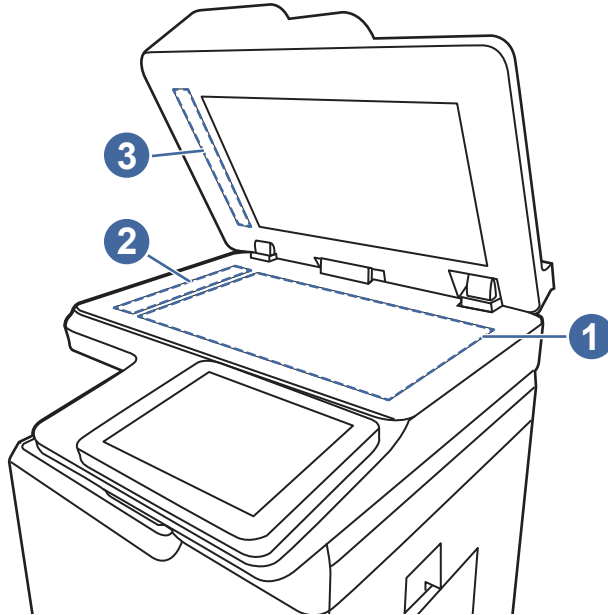
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



**CAUTION:** Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

**NOTE:** If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.
5. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



## Check the resolution settings

Follow these steps to adjust the resolution setting. Setting the resolution to a high value increases the file size and the scan time.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Scan** application, and then select the **Scan** icon.
2. Select one of the following Scan features:
  - **Scan to Email**
  - **Scan to Network Folder**
  - **Scan to USB Drive**
  - **Scan to SharePoint®**

3. Select [Options](#), and then select [File Type and Resolution](#).
4. Select one of the predefined [Resolution](#) options, and then select [Done](#).
5. Select [Send](#) or [Save](#) to start the scan.

## Check the color settings

Follow these steps to adjust the color setting.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Scan](#) application, and then select the [Scan](#) icon.
2. Select one of the following Scan features:
  - [Save to Device Memory](#)
  - [Scan to Email](#)
  - [Scan to Network Folder](#)
  - [Scan to USB](#)
  - [Scan to SharePoint®](#)
3. Touch the [Options](#) button.
4. In the Options pane, scroll to and select [Color/Black](#).
5. Select one of the predefined options.
6. Touch the [Send](#) button.

## Check the image-adjustment settings

Adjust the settings in the [Scan](#) menu to optimize image quality.

- [Sharpness](#): Clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photos appear smoother.
  - [Darkness](#): Increase or decrease the amount of white and black used in colors in scanned images.
  - [Contrast](#): Increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and the darkest color on the page.
  - [Background Cleanup](#): Remove faint colors from the background of scanned images. For example, if the original document is printed on colored paper, use this feature to lighten the background without affecting the darkness of the image.
  - [Automatic Tone](#): Available for Flow printers only. The printer automatically adjusts the [Darkness](#), [Contrast](#), and [Background Cleanup](#) settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Scan](#) application, and then select the [Scan](#) icon.
  2. Select one of the following Scan features:
    - [Scan to Email](#)
    - [Scan to Network Folder](#)

- [Scan to USB Drive](#)
  - [Scan to Job Storage](#)
  - [Scan to SharePoint®](#)
3. Select [Options](#), and then select [Image Adjustment](#).
  4. Adjust the sliders to set the levels, and then select [Done](#).
  5. Select [Send](#) or [Save](#) to start the scan.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

---

## Optimize scan quality for text or pictures

Optimize the scan job for the type of image being scanned: text, graphics, or photos.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Scan](#) application, and then select the [Scan](#) icon.
2. Select one of the following Scan features:
  - [Scan to Email](#)
  - [Scan to Network Folder](#)
  - [Scan to USB Drive](#)
  - [Scan to Job Storage](#)
  - [Scan to SharePoint®](#)
3. Select [Options](#), and then select [Optimize Text/Picture](#).
4. Select one of the predefined options.
5. Select [Send](#) or [Save](#) to start the scan.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

---

## Check the output-quality settings

This setting adjusts the level of compression when saving the file. For the highest quality, select the highest setting.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Scan](#) application, and then select the [Scan](#) icon.
2. Select one of the following Scan features:
  - [Scan to Email](#)
  - [Scan to Network Folder](#)
  - [Scan to USB Drive](#)

- [Scan to SharePoint®](#)
3. Select [Options](#), and then select [File Type and Resolution](#).
  4. Select one of the predefined [Quality and File Size](#) options, and then select [Done](#).
  5. Select [Send](#) or [Save](#) to start the scan.

## Improve fax image quality

If the printer is having fax quality problems, try the following solutions in the order presented to resolve the issue.

Try these few simple steps first:

- Use the flatbed scanner rather than the document feeder.
- Use high-quality originals.
- When using the document feeder, load the original document into the feeder correctly, using the paper guides, to avoid unclear or skewed images.

If the problem still exists, try these additional solutions. If they do not fix the problem, see “Improve print quality” for further solutions.

## Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

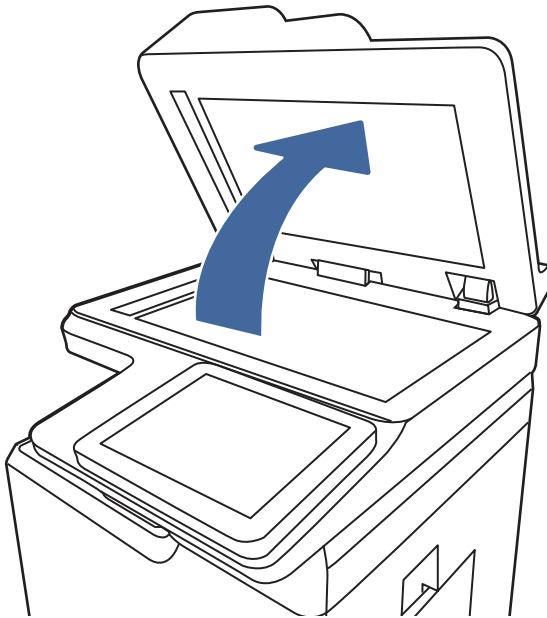
Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

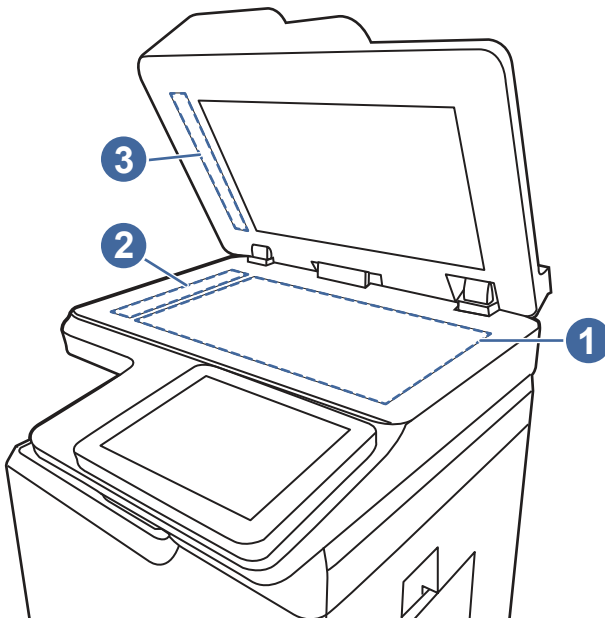
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



**CAUTION:** Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

**NOTE:** If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.

5. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



## Check the send-fax resolution settings

Adjust the resolution of outgoing faxes as needed. A higher resolution setting increases the fax size and send time.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Fax** application, and then select the **Fax** icon.
2. Select **Options**.
3. In the Options pane, scroll to and select **Resolution**.
4. Select one of the predefined options, and then select **Send** to send the fax.

## Check the image-adjustment settings

Adjust the settings in the **Fax** menu to optimize image quality.

- **Sharpness**: Clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photos appear smoother.
  - **Darkness**: Increase or decrease the amount of white and black used in colors in scanned images.
  - **Contrast**: Increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and the darkest color on the page.
  - **Background Cleanup**: Remove faint colors from the background of scanned images. For example, if the original document is printed on colored paper, use this feature to lighten the background without affecting the darkness of the image.
  - **Automatic Tone**: Available for Flow printers only. The printer automatically adjusts the **Darkness**, **Contrast**, and **Background Cleanup** settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the **Fax** application, and then select the **Fax** icon.
  2. Select **Options**.
  3. In the Options pane, scroll to and select **Image Adjustment**.
  4. Adjust the sliders to set the levels, and then select **Done**.
  5. Select **Send** to send the fax.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

## Optimize fax quality for text or pictures

Optimize the fax job for the type of image being scanned: text, graphics, or photos.



1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Fax](#) application, and then select the [Fax](#) icon.
2. Select [Options](#).
3. In the Options pane, scroll to and select [Optimize Text/Picture](#).
4. Select one of the predefined options.
5. Select [Send](#) to send the fax.



**NOTE:** These settings are temporary. After you have finished the job, the printer returns to the default settings.

## Check the error-correction setting

Make sure the [Error Correction Mode](#) setting is enabled. This setting can improve image quality.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Send Settings](#)
  - c. [General Fax Send Settings](#)
3. Select the [Error Correction Mode](#) option. Touch the [Done](#) button.

## Check the fit-to-page setting

If the [Fit to Page](#) setting is enabled, and the incoming fax is larger than the default page size, the printer attempts to scale the image to fit the page. If this setting is disabled, larger images split across multiple pages.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Fax](#)
  - b. [Fax Receive Settings](#)
  - c. [Default Job Options](#)
  - d. [Fit to Page](#)
3. Select the [On](#) option to enable the setting, or select the [Off](#) option to disable it.

## Send to a different fax machine

The problem might be related to fax machine settings or supplies status.

Try sending the fax to a different fax machine. If the fax quality is better, the problem is related to the initial recipient's fax machine settings or supplies status.

## Check the sender's fax machine

Try the following to check the sender's fax machine.

Ask the sender to try sending from a different fax machine. If the fax quality is better, the problem is with the sender's fax machine. If a different fax machine is unavailable, ask the sender to consider making the following changes:

- Make sure the original document is on white (not colored) paper.
- Increase the fax resolution, quality level, or contrast settings.
- If possible, send the fax from a computer software program.

## Solve wired network problems

Check the following information to resolve wired network issues.

### Introduction

Certain types of problems can indicate there is a network communication problem. These problems include the following issues:

### Poor physical connection

Check the cable connections.

1. Verify that the printer is attached to the correct network port using a cable of the correct length.
2. Verify that cable connections are secure.
3. Look at the network port connection on the back of the printer, and verify that the amber activity light flashes indicating network traffic, and the green link-status light is continuously lit indicating a network link.
4. If the problem continues, try a different cable or port on the hub.

### The computer is unable to communicate with the printer

Verify that the printer is communicating with the network and your computer.

1. Test network communication by pinging the network.
  - a. Open a command-line prompt on your computer.
    - For Windows, click **Start**, click **Run**, type `cmd`, and then press `Enter`.
    - For macOS, go to **Applications**, then **Utilities**, and open **Terminal**.
  - b. Type `ping` followed by the IP address for your printer.
  - c. If the window displays round-trip times, the network is working.
2. If the ping command failed, verify that the network hubs are on, and then verify that the network settings, the printer, and the computer are all configured for the same network (also known as subnet).

3. Open the printer properties and click the **Ports** tab. Verify that the current IP address for the printer is selected. The printer IP address is listed on the printer configuration page.
4. If you installed the printer using the HP standard TCP/IP port, select the box labeled **Always print to this printer, even if its IP address changes**.
5. If you installed the printer using a Microsoft standard TCP/IP port, use the printer's hostname instead of the IP address.
6. If the IP address is correct, delete the printer and then add it again.
7. Reinstall the printer software and driver.

## The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network

HP recommends leaving these settings in automatic mode (the default setting). If you change these settings, you must also change them for your network.

## New software programs might be causing compatibility problems

Verify that any new software programs are correctly installed and that they use the correct print driver.

## The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly

An incorrectly configured computer can cause issues with printing.

1. Check the network drivers, print drivers, and the network redirection settings.
2. Verify that the operating system is configured correctly.

## The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect

Check the network settings.

1. Review the printer's configuration/networking pages to check the status of the network settings and protocols.
2. Reconfigure the network settings if necessary.

# Solve wireless network problems

Check the following information to resolve wireless network issues.

## Introduction

Use the troubleshooting information to help resolve issues.



**NOTE:** To determine whether HP NFC, Wi-Fi, BLE, or other wireless printing capabilities are enabled on the printer, print a configuration page from the printer control panel.



**NOTE:** If you have been experiencing intermittent loss of network connectivity, first update the printer firmware. For instructions on how to update the printer firmware, go to <http://support.hp.com>, search for your printer, and then search on "update the firmware."

## Wireless connectivity checklist

Use the checklist to help resolve wireless connection issues.

- For printers that do not support simultaneous wired and wireless connections, verify that the network cable is not connected.
- Verify that the printer and the wireless router are turned on and have power. Also make sure that the wireless radio in the printer is turned on. (The wireless network indicator is solid when the printer is connected to a wireless network, and blinking when it is searching for a wireless network.)
- Verify that the service set identifier (SSID) is correct:
  - For a wireless connection to your network, confirm that your mobile device is connecting to the correct router/access point.
  - For a Wi-Fi Direct connection, print a configuration page to determine the printer's SSID.

If you are not sure that the SSID is correct, run the wireless setup again.

- With secured networks, verify that the security information is correct. If the security information is incorrect, run the wireless setup again.
- If the wireless network is working correctly, try accessing other computers on the wireless network. If the network has Internet access, try connecting to the Internet over a wireless connection.
- Verify that the encryption method (AES or TKIP) is the same for the printer as it is for the wireless access point (on networks using WPA security).
- Verify that the printer is within the range of the wireless network. For most networks, the printer must be within 30 m (100 ft) of the wireless access point (wireless router).
- Verify that obstacles do not block the wireless signal. Remove any large metal objects between the access point and the printer. Make sure poles, walls, or support columns containing metal or concrete do not separate the printer and wireless access point.
- Verify that the printer is located away from electronic devices that might interfere with the wireless signal. Many devices can interfere with the wireless signal including motors, cordless phones, security system cameras, other wireless networks, and some Bluetooth devices.
- For computers connecting to the wireless printer:
  - Verify that the print driver is installed on the computer.
  - Verify that you have selected the correct printer port.
  - Verify that the computer and printer connect to the same wireless network.
  - If your environment has multiple wireless signals and you need the printer to support dual band networks on both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, install the HP Jetdirect 2900nw print server accessory.
  - For macOS, verify that the wireless router supports Bonjour.

## The printer does not print after the wireless configuration completes

Resolve issues between your computer and the printer.

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on and in the ready state.

2. Turn off any third-party firewalls on your computer.
3. Make sure that the wireless network is working correctly.
4. Make sure that your computer is working correctly. If necessary, restart the computer.
5. Verify that you can open the printer HP Embedded Web Server from a computer on the network.

## The printer does not print, and the computer has a third-party firewall installed

Verify that a firewall is not interfering with wireless communication.

1. Update the firewall with the most recent update available from the manufacturer.
2. If programs request firewall access when you install the printer or try to print, make sure that you allow the programs to run.
3. Temporarily turn off the firewall, and then install the wireless printer on the computer. Enable the firewall when you have completed the wireless installation.

## The wireless connection does not work after moving the wireless router or printer

Verify that the printer and network settings are correct.

1. Make sure that the router or printer connects to the same network that your computer connects to.
2. Print a configuration page.
3. Compare the service set identifier (SSID) on the configuration page to the SSID in the printer configuration for the computer.
4. If the numbers are not the same, the devices are not connecting to the same network. Reconfigure the wireless setup for the printer.

## Cannot connect more computers to the wireless printer

Complete the following steps to solve connection issues.

1. Make sure that the other computers are within the wireless range and that no obstacles block the signal. For most networks, the wireless range is within 30 m (100 ft) of the wireless access point.
2. Make sure that the printer is turned on and in the ready state.
3. Make sure there are not more than 5 concurrent Wireless Print Direct users.
4. Turn off any third-party firewalls on your computer.
5. Make sure that the wireless network is working correctly.
6. Make sure that your computer is working correctly. If necessary, restart the computer.

## The wireless printer loses communication when connected to a VPN

Typically, you cannot connect to a VPN and other networks at the same time.

## The network does not appear in the wireless networks list

Follow these steps when the network does not appear in the wireless network list on your computer or mobile device.

- Make sure the wireless router is turned on and has power.
- The network might be hidden. However, you can still connect to a hidden network. Make sure the router/access point is advertising the SSID by checking for its SSID in the available networks seen by your mobile device.

## The wireless network is not functioning

Complete the following steps to ensure that the network is functioning correctly.

1. For printers that do not support simultaneous wired and wireless connections, make sure that the network cable is disconnected.
2. To verify if the network has lost communication, try connecting other devices to the network.
3. Test network communication by pinging the network.
  - a. Open a command-line prompt on your computer.
    - For Windows, click **Start**, click **Run**, type `cmd`, and then press `Enter`.
    - For macOS, go to **Applications**, then **Utilities**, and open **Terminal**.
  - b. Type `ping` followed by the router IP address.
  - c. If the window displays round-trip times, the network is working.
4. Make sure that the router or printer connects to the same network that the computer connects to.
  - a. Print a configuration page.
  - b. Compare the service set identifier (SSID) on the configuration report to the SSID in the printer configuration for the computer.
  - c. If the numbers are not the same, the devices are not connecting to the same network. Reconfigure the wireless setup for the printer.

## Reduce interference on a wireless network

The following tips can reduce interference in a wireless network:

- Keep the wireless devices away from large metal objects, such as filing cabinets, and other electromagnetic devices, such as microwaves and cordless telephones. These objects can disrupt radio signals.
- Keep the wireless devices away from large masonry structures and other building structures. These objects can absorb radio waves and lower signal strength.
- Position the wireless router in a central location in line of sight with the wireless printers on the network.

## Solve fax problems

Use the following sections to solve issues involving the printer fax functions.

### Checklist for solving fax problems

Use the following checklist to help identify the cause of any fax-related problems you encounter:

- **Are you using the fax cable supplied with the fax accessory?** This fax accessory has been tested with the supplied fax cable to meet RJ11 and functional specifications. Do not substitute another fax cable; the analog-fax accessory requires an analog-fax cable. It also requires an analog phone connection.
- **Is the fax/phone line connector seated in the outlet on the fax accessory?** Make sure that the phone jack is correctly seated in the outlet. Insert the connector into the outlet until it "clicks."

---

 **NOTE:** Verify that the phone jack is connected to the fax port rather than to the network port. The ports are similar.

---

- **Is the phone wall jack working properly?** Verify that a dial tone exists by attaching a phone to the wall jack. Can you hear a dial tone, and can you make or receive a phone call?

## What type of phone line are you using?

Verify the type of phone line you are using, and review the recommendations for that type of line.

- **Dedicated line:** A standard analog fax/phone line assigned to receive or send faxes.

---

 **NOTE:** The phone line should be for printer fax use only and not shared with other types of telephone devices. Examples include alarm systems that use the phone line for notifications to a monitoring company.

---

- **PBX system:** A business-environment phone system. Standard home phones and the fax accessory use an analog phone signal. Some PBX systems are digital and might not be compatible with the fax accessory. You might need an interfacing Analog Telephone Adapter (ATA) to connect the fax machine to digital PBX systems.
- **Roll-over lines:** A phone system feature where a new call "rolls over" to the next available line when the first incoming line is busy. Try attaching the printer to the first incoming phone line. The fax accessory answers the phone after it rings the number of times set in the rings-to-answer setting.

## Are you using a surge-protection device?

A surge-protection device can be used between the wall jack and the fax accessory to protect the fax accessory against electrical power passed through the phone lines. These devices can cause some fax communication problems by degrading the quality of the phone signal.

If you are having problems sending or receiving faxes and are using one of these devices, connect the printer directly to the phone jack on the wall to determine whether the problem is with the surge-protection device.

## Are you using a phone company voice-messaging service or an answering machine?

If the rings-to-answer setting for the messaging service is lower than the rings-to-answer setting for the fax accessory, the messaging service answers the call, and the fax accessory cannot receive faxes.

If the rings-to-answer setting for the fax accessory is lower than that of the messaging service, the fax accessory answers all calls.

## Does your phone line have a call-waiting feature?

If the fax telephone line has an activated call-waiting feature, a call-waiting notice can interrupt a fax call in progress, which causes a communication error.

Ensure that a call-waiting feature is not active on the fax telephone line.

## Check fax accessory status

If the analog-fax accessory does not appear to be functioning, print a [Configuration Page](#) report to check the status.

1. From the Home screen, scroll to and select [Reports](#).
2. Open the following menus:
  - a. [Configuration/Status Pages](#)
  - b. [Configuration Page](#)
3. Touch the [Print](#) button to print the report, or touch the [View](#) button to view the report on the screen. The report consists of several pages.



**NOTE:** The printer IP address or host name is listed on the Jetdirect Page.

4. On the Fax Accessory Page of the Configuration Page, under the Hardware Information heading, check the Modem Status. The following table identifies the status conditions and possible solutions.



**NOTE:** If the Fax Accessory Page does not print, there might be a problem with the analog fax accessory. If you are using LAN fax or Internet fax, those configurations could be disabling the feature.

**Table 9-14 Analog-fax accessory troubleshooting**

| Status conditions                               | Possible solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operational / Enabled <sup>1</sup>              | The analog-fax accessory is installed and ready.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Operational / Disabled <sup>1</sup>             | <p>The fax accessory is installed, but you have not configured the required fax settings yet.</p> <p>The fax accessory is installed and operational; however, the HP Digital Sending utility has either disabled the printer fax feature or has enabled LAN fax. When LAN fax is enabled, the analog-fax feature is disabled. Only one fax feature, either LAN fax or analog fax, can be enabled at a time.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If LAN fax is enabled, the <a href="#">Scan to Fax</a> feature is unavailable on the printer control panel.</p> |
| Non-Operational / Enabled/Disabled <sup>1</sup> | The printer has detected a firmware failure. Upgrade the firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Damaged / Enabled/Disabled <sup>1</sup>         | The fax accessory has failed. Reseat the fax accessory card and check for bent pins. If the status is still DAMAGED, replace the analog-fax accessory card.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

<sup>1</sup> ENABLED indicates that the analog-fax accessory is enabled and turned on; DISABLED indicates that LAN fax is enabled (analog fax is turned off).

## General fax problems

Learn about solutions for common fax problems.

### The fax failed to send

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

JBIG is enabled, and the receiving fax machine does not have JBIG capability.



Turn off the JBIG setting.

### No fax address book button displays

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

None of the contacts in the selected contacts list have fax information associated with them. Add the necessary fax information.

### Not able to locate the Fax settings in HP Web Jetadmin

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

Fax settings in HP Web Jetadmin are located under the device's status page drop-down menu.

Select **Digital Sending and Fax** from the drop-down menu.

### The header is appended to the top of the page when the overlay option is enabled

This fax issue is a normal part of operation.

For all forwarded faxes, the printer appends the overlay header to the top of a page.

This is normal operation.

### A mix of names and numbers is in the recipients box

This fax issue is a normal part of operation.

Names and numbers can both display, depending on where they are from. The fax address book lists names, and all other databases list numbers.

This is normal operation.

### A one-page fax prints as two pages

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

The fax header is being appended to the top of the fax, pushing text to a second page.

To print a one page fax on a single page, set the overlay header to overlay mode, or adjust the fit-to-page setting.

### A document stops in the document feeder in the middle of faxing

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

A jam is in the document feeder.

Clear the jam, and send the fax again.

### The volume for sounds coming from the fax accessory is too high or too low

Verify the fax issue, and try the suggested solution.

The volume setting needs to be adjusted.

Adjust the volume in the [Fax Send Settings](#) menu and the [Fax Receive Settings](#) menu.

# Index

## Symbols/Numerics

2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray  
clear jams 150  
loading 26  
paper orientation 26  
3-bin stapler/stacker  
clear staple jams 150  
550-sheet paper trays  
part numbers 34  
550-sheet trays  
jams 150

## A

accessories  
ordering 34  
overview 34  
part numbers 34  
acoustic specifications 16  
AirPrint 58, 60  
alternative letterhead mode 18, 22, 25, 26  
Android devices  
printing from 58, 60

## B

bin, output  
locating 2  
Bonjour  
identifying 122  
browser requirements  
HP Embedded Web Server 122

## C

calibrate  
scanner 213  
cartridge  
replacing 42  
cartridge policy 37  
cartridge protection 37, 39  
cartridges  
order numbers 42  
checklist  
wireless connectivity 226, 227  
cleaning  
glass 213, 216, 221

paper path 200  
control panel  
help 140  
locating 2  
locating features 5  
copy  
optimize for text or pictures 213  
copy settings  
HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 126  
copying  
overview 63  
customer support  
online 140

## D

default gateway, setting 133, 134  
deleting  
stored jobs 55, 57  
digital send settings  
HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 127  
digital sending  
folders 105  
sending documents 102  
USB 109  
dimensions, printer 13  
document feeder  
jams 150  
paper-feeding problems 143, 149  
double-sided printing  
Mac 52  
Windows 49  
duplex printing  
Mac 52  
duplex printing (double-sided)  
settings (Windows) 49  
Windows 49  
duplexing  
manually (Mac) 52  
manually (Windows) 49

## E

easy-access USB printing 61  
EconoMode setting 200

edge-to-edge copying 213  
electrical specifications 16  
Embedded Web Server  
changing network settings 132  
changing printer name 133  
opening 132  
Embedded Web Server (EWS)  
assigning passwords 135  
features 122  
network connection 122  
energy use, optimizing 137  
envelopes  
loading 27  
orientation 18, 20, 27  
Ethernet (RJ-45)  
locating 4  
Explorer, versions supported  
HP Embedded Web Server 122

## F

fax  
block 120  
feeding problems 229, 231  
optimize for text or pictures 221  
overview 113  
required settings 113  
settings 114, 120  
setup 113  
fax port  
locating 4  
fax settings  
HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 128  
required 113  
feeding problems 229, 231  
folders  
sending to 105  
formatter  
locating 3  
fuser  
jams 150

## G

gateway, setting default 133, 134

- general configuration
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 125
- genuine HP cartridges 37
- glass, cleaning 213, 216, 221

## H

- hard disks
  - encrypted 135, 137
- hard drive
  - part number 34
- Help button
  - locating 5
- help, control panel 140
- Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port
  - locating 4
- Home button
  - locating 5
- HP Customer Care 140
- HP Embedded Web Server
  - changing network settings 132
  - changing printer name 133
  - copy settings 122, 124, 126
  - digital send settings 122, 124, 127
  - fax settings 122, 124, 128
  - general configuration 122, 124, 125
  - HP Web Services 122, 124, 130
  - information pages 122, 124
  - network settings 122, 124, 131
  - opening 132
  - other links list 122, 124, 126
  - print settings 122, 124, 126
  - scan settings 122, 124, 127
  - security settings 122, 124, 129
  - supplies 128
  - troubleshooting tools 122, 124, 129
- HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)
  - features 122
  - network connection 122
- HP ePrint 58
- HP ePrint software 58
- HP JetAdvantage business solutions 111
- HP Web Jetadmin 139
- HP Web Services
  - enabling 122, 124, 130

## I

- image quality
  - check toner cartridge status 200
  - check toner-cartridge status 202
- information pages
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124
- interface ports
  - locating 4
- Internet Explorer, versions supported
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122
- IP Security 135, 137
- IPsec 135, 137
- IPv4 address 133
- IPv6 address 134

## J

- jams
  - 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray 150
  - 550-sheet trays 150
  - auto-navigation 150, 151
  - causes of 150, 152
  - document feeder 150
  - fuser 150
  - locations 150
  - lower-right door 150
  - output bin 150
  - right door 150
  - stapler/stacker accessory 150
  - staples in the 3-bin stapler/stacker 150
  - Tray 1 150
  - Tray 2 150
- Jetadmin, HP Web 139
- JetAdvantage 111
- jobs, stored
  - creating (Windows) 55
  - deleting 55, 57
  - Mac settings 55
  - printing 55, 57

## L

- label, orientation 29
- labels
  - printing (Windows) 49
  - printing on 29
- labels, loading 29

- LAN port
  - locating 4
- loading
  - paper in the 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray 26
  - paper in Tray 1 18
  - paper in Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays 22
- local area network (LAN)
  - locating 4
- lock
  - formatter 135, 137
- lower-right door
  - clear jams 150

## M

- Mac driver settings
  - Job Storage 55
- managing network 132
- managing the printer
  - overview 122
- manual duplex
  - Mac 52
  - Windows 49
- margins, small
  - copying 213
- memory
  - included 8
- memory chip (toner)
  - locating 42
- mobile printing
  - Android devices 58, 60
- mobile printing, software supported 13
- multiple pages per sheet
  - printing (Mac) 52
  - printing (Windows) 49

## N

- Near Field Communication
  - printing 58
- Netscape Navigator, versions supported
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122
- network
  - printer name, changing 133
  - settings, changing 132
  - settings, viewing 132
- network duplex settings,
  - changing 134
- Network Folder, scan to 105
- network link speed settings,
  - changing 134

- network settings
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 131
- networks
  - default gateway 133, 134
  - HP Web Jetadmin 139
  - IPv4 address 133
  - IPv6 address 134
  - subnet mask 133, 134
  - supported 8
- NFC accessory
  - part number 34
- NFC connect and print 58
- O**
- on/off button
  - locating 2
- online help, control panel 140
- online support 140
- operating systems, supported 11
- optimize copy images 213
- optimize fax images 221
- optimize scanned images 216
- ordering
  - supplies and accessories 34
- other links list
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 126
- output bin
  - clear jams 150
  - locating 2
- P**
- pages per minute 8
- pages per sheet
  - selecting (Mac) 52
  - selecting (Windows) 49
- paper
  - 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray orientation 26
  - jams 150, 152
  - loading the 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray 26
  - loading Tray 1 18
  - loading Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays 22
  - selecting 200, 203
  - Tray 1 orientation 18, 20
  - Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays orientation 22, 24
- paper jams
  - 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray 150
  - 550-sheet trays 150
- document feeder 150
- fuser 150
- locations 150
- lower-right door 150
- output bin 150
- right door 150
- stapler/stacker accessory 150
- Tray 1 150
- Tray 2 150
- paper pickup problems
  - solving 143, 146
- paper trays
  - overview 18
  - part numbers 34
- paper type
  - selecting (Windows) 49
- paper types
  - selecting (Mac) 52
- paper, ordering 34
- part numbers
  - accessories 34
  - replacement parts 36
  - supplies 36
  - toner cartridges 36
- parts
  - overview 34
- ports
  - locating 4
- power
  - consumption 16
- power connection
  - locating 3
- power switch
  - locating 2
- power usage 137
- print media
  - loading in Tray 1 18
- print on both sides
  - Mac 52
  - manually, Windows 49
  - Windows 49
- print settings
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 126
- printer
  - overview 1
- printing
  - from USB storage accessories 61
  - overview 49
  - stored jobs 55, 57
- printing on both sides
  - settings (Windows) 49
- private printing 55
- product number
  - location 3
- protect cartridges 37, 39
- R**
- replacement parts
  - part numbers 36
- replacing
  - staples 46
  - toner cartridges 42
- required settings
  - fax 113
- reset factory settings 141
- right door
  - jams 150
- RJ-45 port
  - locating 4
- S**
- scan settings
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 127
- Scan to Network Folder 105
  - initial setup 83
- Scan to USB Drive 109
  - enabling 98
- scanner
  - calibrate 213
  - glass cleaning 213, 216, 221
- scanning
  - optimize for text or pictures 216
  - overview 68
- scanning to email
  - sending documents 102
- scanning to folder 105
- scanning to USB 109
- security
  - encrypted hard disk 135, 137
- security settings
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 129
- sending to email
  - sending documents 102
- serial number
  - locating 3
- settings
  - fax 114, 120
  - reset to factory (default) settings 141
- Sign In button
  - locating 5
- Sign Out button
  - locating 5

- sleep delay
  - setting 137
- small margins 213
- special paper
  - printing (Windows) 49
- specifications
  - electrical and acoustic 16
- speed, optimizing 137
- stacking
  - configure the operation mode 30, 31
- stand
  - part number 34
- staple jams
  - 3-bin stapler/stacker 150
- stapler
  - setting default staple location 30
- stapler/stacker accessory
  - clear jams 150
  - configure the operation mode 30, 31
- staples
  - replacing 46
- stapling
  - configure the operation mode 30, 31
  - setting default location 30
- stapling mailbox accessory 30
- status, fax accessory page 229
- storage, job
  - Mac settings 55
- store print jobs 55
- stored jobs
  - creating (Mac) 55
  - creating (Windows) 55
  - deleting 55, 57
  - printing 55, 57
- storing jobs
  - with Windows 55
- subnet mask 133, 134
- supplies
  - HP Embedded Web Server 128
  - low threshold settings 142
  - ordering 34
  - overview 34
  - part numbers 36
  - replacing staples 46
  - replacing toner cartridges 42
  - using when low 142
- support
  - online 140
- supported operating systems 11

- system requirements
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122

## T

- TCP/IP
  - manually configuring IPv4 parameters 133
  - manually configuring IPv6 parameters 134
- technical support
  - online 140
- toner cartridge
  - low threshold settings 142
  - using when low 142
- toner cartridges
  - components 42
  - order numbers 42
  - part numbers 36
  - replacing 42
- toner-collection unit
  - locating 3
- touchscreen
  - locating features 5
- transparencies
  - printing (Windows) 49
- Tray 1
  - jams 150
  - loading envelopes 27
  - paper orientation 18, 20
- Tray 2
  - jams 150
- Tray 2 and the 550-sheet trays
  - loading 22
  - paper orientation 22, 24
- trays
  - capacity 8
  - included 8
  - locating 2
  - use alternative letterhead mode 22, 25
- troubleshooting
  - check toner cartridge status 200
  - check toner-cartridge status 202
  - jams 150, 152
  - network problems 225
  - overview 140
  - paper feed problems 143
  - wired network 225
  - wireless network 226

- troubleshooting tools
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122, 124, 129
- two-sided printing
  - settings (Windows) 49

## U

- USB
  - sending to 109
- USB port
  - enabling 61
  - locating 4
- USB ports, optional
  - part number 34
- USB storage accessories
  - printing from 61

## W

- web browser requirements
  - HP Embedded Web Server 122
- websites
  - customer support 140
  - HP Web Jetadmin, downloading 139
- weight, printer 13
- Wi-Fi Direct Print 13, 58
- wireless network
  - troubleshooting 226
- wireless network
  - interference 226, 229
- wireless print server
  - part number 34